

ПРИДНЕСТРОВСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ

ИМ. Т.Г. ШЕВЧЕНКО

ФИЛОЛОГИЧЕСКИЙ ФАКУЛЬТЕТ

СПЕЦИАЛЬНОЕ СТРАНОВЕДЕНИЕ

**УЧЕБНО-МЕТОДИЧЕСКОЕ ПОСОБИЕ ДЛЯ
СТУДЕНТОВ-ПЕРЕВОДЧИКОВ**

Тирасполь, 2025

Составитель: И.Б. Прокудина, старший преподаватель кафедры теории и практики перевода ПГУ им. Т.Г. Шевченко

Учебно-методическое пособие по специальному страноведению для студентов-переводчиков, второе исправленное – Тирасполь, 2025. – 217 с.

Учебно-методическое пособие предназначено для студентов специальности «Перевод и переводоведение».

Пособие имеет целью ознакомление студентов со страноведческой информацией, при изучении которой необходимо систематически отрабатывать произношения трудных слов, знакомиться с новой лексикой, закреплять слова и словосочетания с национально-культурным компонентом, входящие в активный словарь уроков, а также предусматривает развитие навыков устной речи по темам: 'History and Culture of Great Britain', 'The System of Government in Great Britain', 'Historical Past of the USA', 'Political Life in the USA'.

Данное пособие состоит из 16 уроков по трём основным темам, охватывающим историю и культуру Великобритании и Америки, а также информацию о политических системах этих стран. В каждом уроке содержится основной текстовый материал, который студент должен освоить, примечания к тексту, в которых даётся объяснение реалий, ознакомление с историческими именами и датами. Каждое лабораторное занятие учебного пособия содержит комплекс упражнений: фонетических, лексических, речевых и переводческих.

Учебно-методическое пособие рассчитано на 36 часов обучения. На каждый урок отводится 2 часа аудиторных занятий.

*Рецензенты: **О.В. Балан**, к.п.н., доцент кафедры английской филологии ПГУ им. Т.Г. Шевченко;*

***Л.Л. Костаи**, ст.преподаватель высшей категории кафедры теории и практики перевода*

Прокудина И.Б., 2025

Предисловие

Настоящее учебно-методическое пособие предназначено для использования в преподавании практического курса по специальному страноведению для студентов переводческого отделения. Эта дисциплина охватывает объёмный материал по истории Великобритании, начиная с периода завоевания Римской Империей; включая информацию о королевских династиях, начиная со Средневекового периода. Представлена интересная информация о самых популярных графствах и их основных достопримечательностях Англии, а также представлена не менее важная информация об особенностях системы парламента Великобритании, так как эта страна считается монархической. В пособии представлены также экскурс в историю Америки, подробное описание политической системы США, информация о самых выдающихся американских президентах.

Цель данного учебно-методического пособия - вырабатывать переводческие навыки студентов, развивать способности речевого общения на английском языке, - в конечном итоге, формировать языковую, коммуникативную и лингвострановедческую компетенцию. Базовая составляющая для пособия – использование страноведческой информации.

Учебно-методическое пособие соответствует требованиям рабочей программы по учебной дисциплине «Специальное страноведение».

В учебном пособии представлено 3 раздела, каждый из которых включает от 4 до 7 уроков (в зависимости от темы). В каждом уроке содержится основной текстовый материал, который студент должен освоить (прочитать, перевести и выявить основные аспекты для обсуждения на лабораторных занятиях), примечания к тексту, в которых даётся объяснение реалий, ознакомление с историческими именами и датами.

Каждый урок учебного пособия содержит комплекс упражнений:

- 1. Фонетические упражнения** “Glossary: Practice the following for pronunciation” предназначены для систематической отработки произношения трудных слов, а именно: географических названий и терминов.
- 2. Лексические упражнения** “Vocabulary exercises” направлены на отработку новой лексики, закрепления слов и словосочетаний с национально-культурным компонентом, входящих в активный словарь урока. Значение новой лексики к текстам представлено либо через перевод на русский язык, либо при помощи других приёмов, в первую очередь, через лексическое значение слов.
- 3. Речевые упражнения** “Oral Language Practice” направлены на отработку навыков говорения с опорой на текст и тему, развитие у студентов навыков устной речи, которые необходимы при работе гидов-переводчиков и предполагают выработку умения связно высказываться при выступлениях с презентациями изученного материала.
- 4. Переводческие упражнения** (‘Translation Exercises’)

Большое внимание уделяется переводческим упражнениям как с русского языка на английский, так и с английского языка на русский, так как студенты уже имеют навыки перевода. Более того, дисциплина «Специальное страноведение» - это уже продолжение дисциплины «История культуры стран изучаемого языка», поэтому страноведческая лексика, как и специфика дисциплины студентам уже знакома. В этой связи предложения для перевода в пособии уже намного сложнее как с грамматической, так и с лексической точки зрения. Работа над активным словарём завершается контрольным переводом, который может выполняться как в устной, так и в письменной форме.

На лабораторных занятиях используются видеосюжеты, посвящённые той или иной теме урока, на английском языке в заданиях **‘Translate the suggested video-information’**. В таких случаях у студентов появляется возможность не только «попутешествовать» по стране изучаемого языка, но и послушать речь носителей языка, а также проверить свои возможности воспринимать английскую речь на слух и переводить полученную информацию на русский язык. Как правило, видеосюжеты преподаватель подбирает сам.

Каждый последующий раздел данного пособия, является, с одной стороны, ещё одним шагом в изучении страноведческого материала, а с другой – ступенью развития переводческой компетенции и обучения общению на английском языке.

Страноведческая направленность текстов пособия способствует усвоению студентами элементов иноязычной культуры, повышению познавательной активности обучаемых, созданию у них положительной мотивации, наконец, в процессе обучения вырабатываются переводческие навыки. Всё это необходимо переводчику – посреднику между двумя лингвокультурами.

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

Предисловие	3
Unit I: HISTORY AND CULTURE OF GREAT BRITAIN	
Lesson 1 Ancient History of England.	6
Lesson 2 Rise of towns in England.....	17
Lesson 3 Modern England. Counties and Regions. The South-West.....	26
Lesson 4 The Southern England. The West Country.....	36
Lesson 5 The Southeast. East Anglia.....	45
Lesson 6 The North of England.....	56
Lesson 7 Central England.....	65
Unit II: THE SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT IN GREAT BRITAIN	
Lesson 1 Monarchy as a system of Government. Coronation ceremony and Royal Regalia.....	74
Lesson 2 British Royalty.....	85
Lesson 3 Modern Britain: the Windsors.	110
Lesson 4 The Royal Residences.....	125
Lesson 5 The History of British Parliament.....	133
Lesson 6 The Legislative Branch of British Government.....	141
Lesson 7 The Executive Branch of British Government. Outstanding Politicians of Great Britain.....	149
Unit III: HISTORICAL PAST OF THE USA. AMERICAN GOVERNMENT	
Lesson 1 A Brief Overview of the American History.....	165
Lesson 2 The Declaration of Independence. Founding Fathers.....	177
Lesson 3 Political Life and Democratic process	190
Lesson 4 Outstanding American Presidents	199
Additional Information	210
Список литературы	214

UNIT I

HISTORY AND CULTURE OF GREAT BRITAIN

Lesson 1

Ancient History of England

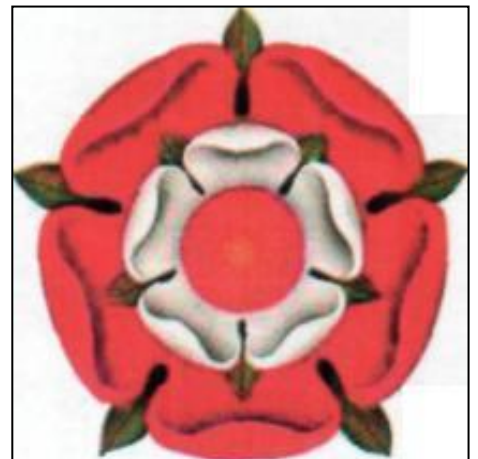
From the History of England

‘England is a living guide-book to over two thousand years of civilization’ .

The land

England is the largest country in the UK. England accounts for 57 per cent of the area of the island of Great Britain and is bordered in the north by Scotland; on the west by the Irish Sea, Wales and the Atlantic Ocean; on the south by the English Channel; and on the east by the North Sea.

England has the largest population. It's a country of considerable variety both in its people and its landscapes. While the identity of England and the English is bound up with Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland, it is a separate country, with its own distinct features. More than ever, in the 21st century, it is a land of many cultures, races and religions. Its main cities are the most cosmopolitan in the world.



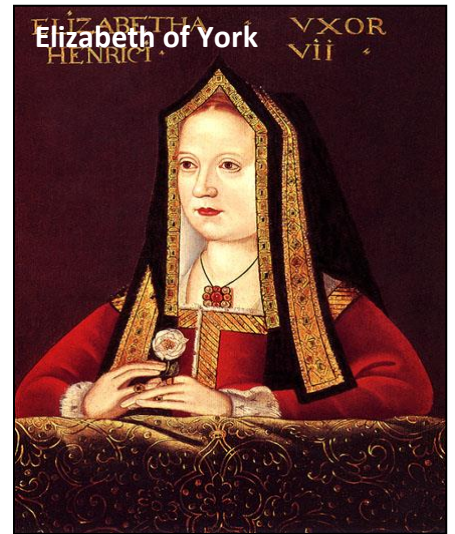
National emblems

Each country within the United Kingdom has a national emblem, as well as its own flag. England's official emblem is a **red rose**.

Red and white roses were chosen as emblems during **the War of the Roses**, the period of fighting (1455-1485) in England between the supporters of the two most powerful families in the country at the



time, **the House of Lancaster**, whose symbol was a red rose, and **the House of York**, whose symbol was a white rose. That's why the war between them got the name of the War of the Roses. The aim of each side was to make a member of their family the king of England. This war, which lasted for thirty years, turned into a bitter struggle



for the Crown, in which each party murdered every likely heir to the throne of the opposite party. It was a dark time for England, a time of anarchy, when the kings and nobles were busy fighting and murdering each other and had no time to take care of the common people, who suffered greatly.

Each side was successful at different times and the wars only ended when Henry Tudor (House of Lancaster) defeated Richard III (House of York) and became **King Henry VII**. The war was over at last, and everybody sighed with relief.

Henry Tudor was head of the House of Lancaster. A year later, in 1486, he married the Yorkist heiress Princess Elizabeth of York. His marriage to Elizabeth of York united the two sides and ended the fighting. This marriage was of great political importance. It meant the union of the red rose of the House of Lancaster with the white rose of the House of York. This combination was introduced by Henry VII, when he became the first Tudor monarch, as a national symbol of England.

St George is the national patron saint of England. Many people believe he was a Christian martyr (a person who is killed because of his religious beliefs) in the third century. According to the legend, he killed a dragon to save a woman. He is often shown in pictures fighting the dragon.

Saint's day in England is 23 April.

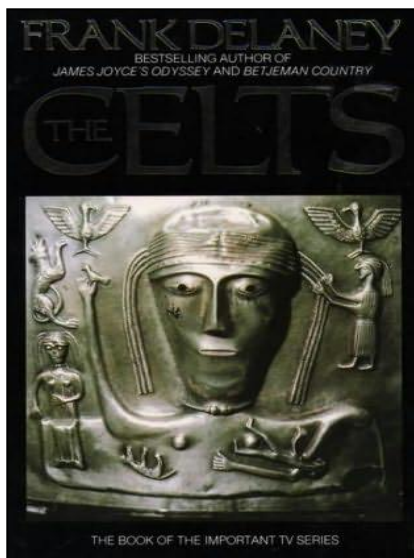
Early Britain

The early story of Britain starts some half a million years ago in prehistory (the vast period of time before written records). Little is known about the ancient population of the British Isles. Like other primitive people in other parts of the world they lived in caves, hunted animals and gathered food from what was around them. These hunters and gatherers began to build camps some of which have been discovered. Then they built primitive villages and dug huge ditches to make hill forts. Gradually they learnt to grow corn and breed domestic animals. They made primitive tools and weapons of stone. At

about the time the Egyptians were building the Great Pyramid of Giza, the earliest Britons started to build **Stonehenge** – one of the most remarkable prehistoric stone structures in the world. Britain was still a fairly primitive land compared with Egypt and other major civilizations.

The Celts

About 500-600 BC new people – **the Celts** – appeared in Britain. They crossed the English Channel from the territory of the present-day France. The Romans called these people Britons. In the course of centuries the Britons partly killed the native population, partly mixed with it. Powerful Celtic tribes held most of the country. They were tall, strong people with long red or sandy hair, long flowing moustaches but no beards, armed with iron swords and knives which were much stronger than the bronze weapons used by the native population. The Celts were skilful workers. They made things out of iron, bronze, tin, clay and wood, and decorated them with beautifully drawn lines and patterns. They made money out of gold and silver. They began to make roads, along which they travelled about the country, buying and selling things.



The richer Celts lived in big houses. When they had feasts in their houses, they sat round low tables. There were no forks or spoons. They took big pieces of meat in their fingers and tore them apart, or cut them with their knives. They drank from big cups made of earthenware or silver.

Not all parts of Britain were civilized. In the mountains and forests of the west (modern Wales) and north (modern Scotland) there were people who didn't know the use of iron and didn't use money. They had no real houses, but still lived in caves. The parts of the south-east of Britain (modern England) were most civilized, because they were nearest to the continent, from which people got new knowledge.

We know more about the Celts than about the earlier inhabitants of the island, because of the written accounts that exist. The Celts didn't write down the events themselves. Other people who knew them described them in their books.

The Greeks were the first to mention the British Isles. The ancient Greek historian Herodotus who is called the Father of History wrote that in the 5th century B.C. the Phoenicians used to come to the British Isles for tin which was used in making bronze. They called the British Isles the Tin Islands.

In their mode of life the British Celts differed little from the Celtic tribes of the Gauls who lived on the Continent. In the 1st century B.C. they lived in tribes, and were ruled by chiefs whom all the tribesmen obeyed. The chiefs were military leaders and some of them were very powerful. The military leaders of the largest tribes were sometimes called kings.

The Celts had no towns; they lived in villages. They kept large herds of cattle and sheep which formed their chief wealth. The clothing of the Celts, who inhabited the south-eastern parts of the island, was made of wool, woven in many colours while the other Celts wore skins.

The Celts worshipped Nature: the Sky, the Moon, the Sun, the Earth and the sea. They also believed in many nameless spirits who lived in the rivers, lakes, mountains and thick forests. The Celts believed in another life after death. They were taught by priests called **Druids** that their souls passed after death from one body to another. The druids lived near groves of oak-trees which were considered to be sacred places. No one was allowed to come near without permission. The druids were very important and powerful, sometimes, more powerful than the chiefs. The Celts believed in their magic power. They believed that the druids were able to foretell the future and the druids very often acted as prophets. The tribesmen often called upon the druids to settle disputes. The druids could give orders to begin a battle or to put down arms and stop fighting. The druids were also teachers and doctors for they were wiser than the other tribesmen. Wise women were also considered to be very important. There were women prophets, and women warriors who trained young men in arms; some women were made tribal chiefs and called ‘**queens**’.

Roman invasions

By 100 B.C. the Romans had an Empire that bordered all of the Mediterranean Sea, and stretched across most of Europe, North Africa and the Middle East up to the Red Sea. The Roman army’s **legions**¹ had conquered France, which was called Gaul, and were poised to cross the English Channel.

Notes

¹**legion** – is a body of warriors in the Roman army. It included cavalry as well as infantry and numbered about 6 000 men.

Their knowledge of Britain came from the reports of traders. At first, invasion was not considered worthwhile because the goods the island had to offer – tin, cloth, corn, gold and slaves – could be taken from other tribes on the Continent. But army commanders, including Julius Caesar, the governor of Gaul, wanted more victories.



Julius Caesar landed on the English coast in 55 B.C. Although he had 10 000 troops and cavalry, storms damaged his ships and after fierce fighting with the Britons he had to retreat. The Celts made a great impression on the Romans, who saw

them for the first time in battle. On the occasion of the battle their hair and moustaches were dyed red and their legs and arms were painted blue. With loud shouts they attacked the Romans in chariots and on foot and the well-armed invincible Romans under one of the greatest generals of that time had to return to Gaul.

In the next year, 54 B.C., Caesar again came to Britain, this time with larger forces (25 000 men). The Celts fought bravely for their independence but they were not strong enough, in spite of their courage, to drive the Romans off. The Romans who had better arms and armour and were much better trained defeated the Celts in several battles. Caesar then went back to Gaul to complete his conquest on the Continent.

Although Julius Caesar came to Britain twice in the course of two years, he wasn't able, really, to conquer it.

In 43 A.D. a Roman army invaded Britain and conquered the South-East. The Celts fought fiercely against the Romans who never managed to become masters of the whole island. They were unable to conquer the Scottish Highlands and **the province**¹ of Britain consisted only of the southern part of the island.

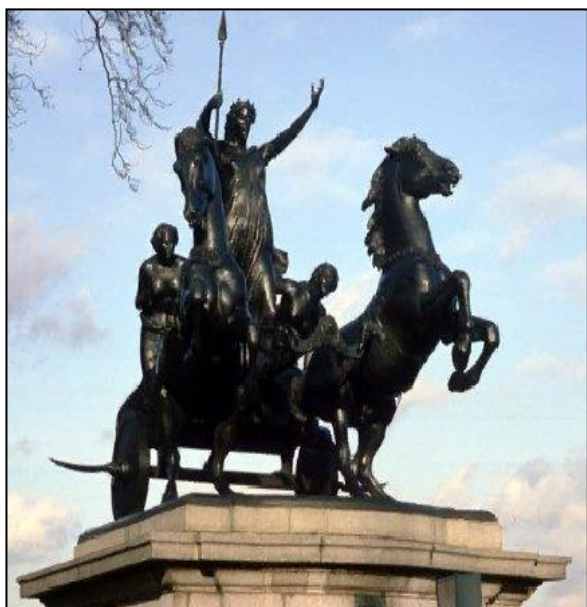
Notes

¹*province* – is a country under Roman domination.

To defend their province the Romans stationed their legions in Britain. Straight roads were built so that the legions might march quickly, whenever they were needed, to any part of the country. These roads were made so well that they lasted a long time and still exist today. Bridges of stone were built, some of them can still be found in Britain today.

The revolt of Queen Boudicea

Although the Romans had occupied Britain, there were many British men and women hidden



away in the great forests and swamps who refused to submit. Some of the British tribes were more warlike than others, and one of these was the tribe of the Iceni, who lived in what is now Norfolk. King of a Norfolk tribe died and left his fortune jointly to his two daughters and the Roman Emperor. The Romans proceeded to take over the kingdom, and Catus, the Roman treasurer, seized all of the king's dominions, ill-treated the daughters and had their mother, Queen Boudicca, publicly bound and scourged. Outraged, Boudicca led a fierce revolt. Under her

leadership the Iceni burnt to the ground Colchester, St Albans and Londinium and slaughtered many Romans.

The Roman Governor of Britain at that time was a famous soldier named Suetonius. He had about 10 000 trained Roman soldiers with him, and although Boudicca had 100 000 fighting men, Suetonius had no doubt that the training and discipline of the Roman army would give him the victory. Suetonius placed his men on the slope of a hill, protected by woods on both sides. The British thought that the Romans were trapped, and they crowded in the woods to attack them. At the right moment, when Boudicca's men were so crowded together that they could not use their arms, the Romans attacked, and the British were completely beaten. The Queen took poison. Organized resistance by British tribes to Rome was over.

Hadrian's Wall

In the year 122 the Roman Emperor Hadrian came to Britain – the first to do so since Claudius. Hadrian was a great traveler and wherever he went in the Roman Empire, he strengthened its frontiers. He ordered a wall to be built across the narrowest part of the country to guard the province against the Picts and Scots who lived in the hills of Scotland. It was called '**Hadrian's Wall**', which was a great work of military engineering, and stretched across the country for 117 kilometres. Hadrian's Wall took seven years to complete, and long stretches of it still stand today at a height of 2 metres. The wall was made of stone about 4.5 metres high and 3 metres thick, with a ditch on the north side. About every 1.5 kilometres stood a small fort called a milecastle – barracks for 25-50 men. In total, as many as 5 000 troops might have been needed to guard, supply and to look after the entire wall's defences. There were also 17 major forts added to the wall at regular distances. These were really small military towns with headquarters, barracks for the troops to sleep in, workshops for weapons and tools, a hospital and a large granary for food supplies.

When the Northern Britons were not at war with the Romans they often came to the wall and traded with the warriors and the Romans would go hunting in the region north of the wall. Hadrian's Wall was the strongest of all the Roman frontier fortifications.

Roman influence in Britain

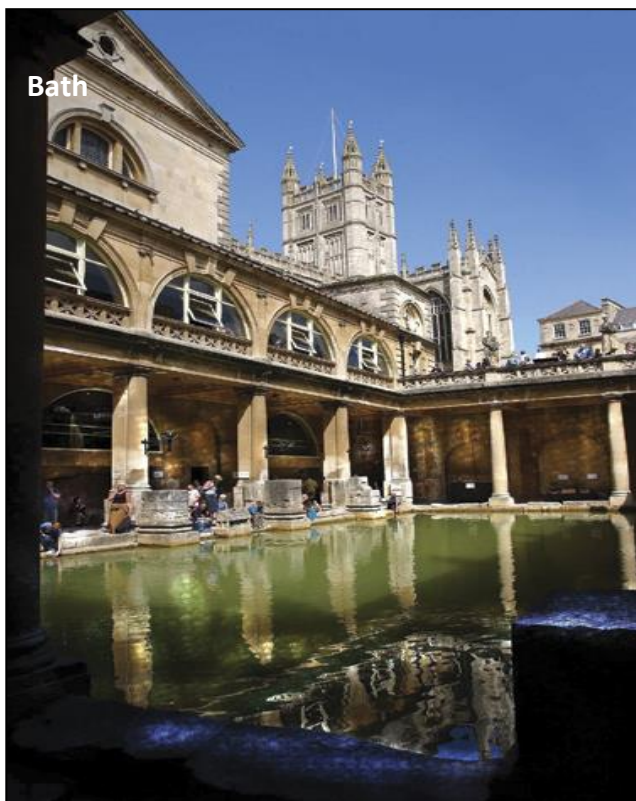
As a result of the conquest signs of Roman civilization spread over Britain. There had been no towns in Britain before the Romans conquered it. The civilized Romans were the city dwellers, and as soon as they conquered Britain they began to build towns, splendid villas, public baths as in Rome itself. **York, Gloucester, Lincoln** and **London** became the chief Roman towns; there were also about fifty other smaller towns. London which had been a small trading settlement before the conquest now became a centre for trade both by road and river. Colchester, Gloucester, York and Lincoln sprang up round the Roman military camps. The town of **Bath** became famous for its hot springs. The public baths were very

popular places for people to meet together to gossip, to do sports or discuss business, rather than simply to wash. The baths were cheap and children got in free.

The Romans also built theatres and amphitheatres in several British towns. In these huge arenas, a

variety of different shows were put on to amuse the people such as gladiators fighting each other to the death, cock-fighting and bull-baiting.

In most towns there were market places and plenty of shops where merchants sold their goods. The houses were built of stone, plastered and painted, with roofs made of large red tiles. The rich merchants and officials had luxurious houses which contained many rooms, with mosaic floors and central heating. Every Roman town had a drainage system and a good supply of pure water. Great tracts of forest were cleared, swamps were drained, and corn-fields took their place. Farming techniques don't seem to have changed much under the Romans, though new vegetables like cabbages, peas and fruits like plums, apples and cherries were introduced.



But together with the high civilization the Romans brought exploitation and slavery to the British Isles. Prisoners of war were sent to the slave-market in the Roman Empire. The free Celts were not turned into slaves but they had to pay heavy taxes to the conquerors and were made to work for them.

Among the Celts themselves inequality began to grow - the tribal chiefs and nobility became richer than other members of the tribe. The noble Celts adopted the mode of life of their conquerors. They lived in rich houses and they dressed as Romans. They were proud to wear the toga which was the sign of being a Roman citizen. But the poor Celts went on living in their tiny huts, they spoke their native Celtic tongue and they didn't understand the language of their rulers.

Often, even now, when men are digging in England they find Roman pottery lamps which lit their houses, glass, decorated jewellery of bronze and gold, tiles, statues, armour, coins and other things that were used by the Romans in those old times. Many of these remains may be seen in British museums.

Besides, many words of Modern English have come from Latin. The words which the Romans left behind them in the language of Britain are for the most part the names of the things which they taught the Celts. For example, the word '**street**' came from the Latin '**strata**' which means '**road**'; '**port**' from '**portus**'; '**wall**' from '**vallum**'.

Perhaps most importantly the Romans brought a written language, Latin, and written numbers. The history of Britain was now recorded on paper and many of the first accounts have been passed down by Roman writers. The Romans were also highly organized: they introduced a ten month calendar, and fixed hours of the day.

Christianity was probably brought to Britain by Roman soldiers or civilian settlers from Gaul. The influence of Roman Christianity led to the building of crosses and later churches. British pagan gods and goddesses were slowly replaced. The Emperor Constantine made Christianity Rome's official religion in AD 324, by which time England already had three bishops, at Lincoln, London and York.

The Roman way of life influenced only the south-eastern part of the country. They built most of their towns there. The old way of life of the British Celts didn't change very much. Only the Celts of the South and East adopted the Roman way of life. At the same time the Celts who lived in the country far away from the Roman towns kept to their customs and Roman influence upon them was insignificant. In the remoter western parts of the country and especially in the North the old tribal life went on, and villages of native tribes, still living under the primitive system, were predominant.

The End of Roman rule

Two things combined to bring about the end of Roman rule in Britain. One was civil war between rival generals fighting to become emperor. The other was the increasing number of attacks on Rome by **barbarian**¹ tribes from northern Europe. Slowly, legions of troops were withdrawn from Britain to protect other parts of the Roman Empire. The last legion left in AD 406. Roman coins stopped being used by AD 430; Hadrian's Wall and other forts were neglected and villas abandoned; nobody repaired the roads and 400 years of Roman rule in Britain slowly disappeared.

Notes

¹**barbarian** – The Roman regarded all peoples outside the Roman Empire as barbarians. In history the word 'barbarian' is used to define the level of social development of the Germanic tribes in the first centuries A.D. In the modern language the word means an ignorant, rude, cruel person.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- heir to the throne – наследник престола
- martyr – мученик, страдалец
- earthenware – глиняные изделия
- chief – вождь (племени, клана)
- tribesman – член рода

-priest – жрец
 -grove – роща, лесок
 -sacred places – священные места
 -to foretell – предсказывать
 -prophet – пророк, проповедник
 -chariot – колесница
 -invincible – непобедимый
 -revolt – мятеж, восстание
 -to submit – подчинять, покорять
 -to proceed – действовать, поступать
 -treasurer – казначей
 -to scourge – наказывать, бичевать
 -outraged – оскорблённый, поруганный
 -to slaughter – устраивать резню
 -granary – амбар, зернохранилище
 -to amuse – забавлять, развлекать
 -bull-baiting – травля быков
 -merchant – купец
 -tin – олово
 -to plaster – штукатурить
 -tile – черепица
 -drainage system – канализация
 -defence – оборона; защита
 -toga – тога (одежда римлянина)
 -barbarian – варварский
 -civilians – гражданское население
 -to abandon – покидать; отказываться
 -to neglect – забрасывать, запускать

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Lancaster, York, Henry Tudor, St George, the Celts, Herodotus, Phoenicians, Gaul, the Mediterranean Sea, Julius Caesar, Queen Boudicea, the Iceni, Norfolk. Colchester, St Albans, Suetonius, Hadrian's Wall, Claudius, Gloucester, Lincoln, the Emperor Constantine.

VOCABULARY EXERCISE

Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a design or picture that represents a country or an organization;
- a group of people of the same race, and with the same customs, language, religion, living in a particular area and often led by a chief;
- a large group of soldiers that forms part of an army, especially the one that existed in ancient Rome;
- a hard surface built for vehicles to travel on;
- a flower with a sweet smell that grows on a bush with thorns;
- the period of time in history before information was written down;
- the act of an army entering another country by force in order to take control of it;

- a public building where you can go to swim;
 - a person long ago in the past who belonged to a European tribe which was considered wild and uncivilized;
 - a person who has the legal right to receive somebody's property, money or title when that person dies;
 - one of the areas that some countries are divided into with its own local government;
 - a person that the Christian Church recognizes as being very holy, because of the way they have lived or died;
 - a leader or ruler of a tribe;
- (*rose, heir, emblem, saint, prehistory, tribe, chief, invasion, legion, province, bath, road, barbarian*)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What are the main England's official emblems? Why?
2. What do we know about prehistory of Britain? Why don't we know much about it?
3. Who were the Celts? How did they live and work?
4. Why do we know more about the Celts than about the earlier inhabitants of the island?
5. What was the most civilized part of Britain? Why?
6. Why did the Romans decide to come to Britain? Did J. Caesar conquer Britain? Why?
7. Why did British tribes organize resistance?
8. Who was Hadrian? Why did he become famous in England?
9. What did the Celts learn from the Romans? How did the Roman way of life influence the life of the Celts?
10. What traces are there of Roman rule in Britain?
11. Name some English words of Latin origin which reflect the rule of Rome in Britain?
12. What was the reason for the weakening and fall of the Roman Empire?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Suggest English equivalents for the Russian parts. Read the whole sentence and translate it into Russian.

1. This war, which lasted for thirty years, turned into a (*ожесточённая борьба*) for the (*Корона*), in which each party murdered every likely (*наследник престола*) of the opposite party.
2. The war was over at last, and everybody (*вздыхнуть с облегчением*).
3. The Celts were (*умелый*) workers. They made things out of (*железо, бронза, олово, глина и дерево*), and (*украшали*) them with (*красиво нарисованные узоры*).
4. With loud shouts they (*нападать*) the Romans in (*колесницы*) and on foot and (*хорошо вооружённые непобедимые*) Romans under one of the (*величайший генерал*) of that time had to return to Gaul.

5. Under her leadership the Iceni (*сжечь дотла*) Colchester, St Albans and Londinium and (*устроить резню*) many Romans.
6. In these huge (*арены*), a variety of different shows were put on (*развлекать*) the people such as (*бои гладиаторов*) each other to the death, (*петушиные бои*) and (*травля быков*).
7. The (*знатный*) Celts adopted the (*образ жизни*) of their (*завоеватели*).
8. (*Христианство*) was probably brought to Britain by (*римские солдаты*) or (*гражданское население*) from Gaul.

II. Test-translation. Express the following in English, using the words and phrases from the texts.

1. Цезарь покорил Галлию и, услышав рассказы об острове с белыми утёсами, а также о храбрости населяющих его бриттов, тут же решил завоевать Британию.

.....

2. Цезарь полагал, что быстро покорит бриттов. Однако, он просчитался: бритты сражались отчаянно и храбро, поэтому он с радостью принял их предложение о мире и уплыл.

.....

3. Римский полководец Светоний захватил остров Англси, который считался священным, и сжёг друидов в их собственных плетёных клетках на их собственных жертвенных кострах.

.....

4. Королева Боадия воспротивилась грабежам, которым подвергали земли бриттов римляне, и её по приказу римского военачальника Ката подвергли бичеванию. Желая отомстить за это, бритты поднялись с оружием в руках, опустошили поместья римлян, изгнали их из Лондона и за несколько дней повесили, сожгли, распяли и закололи мечами семьдесят тысяч римлян.

.....

5. Один за другим сменялись римские императоры, а бритты продолжали восставать против римского владычества. В конце концов, во время правления императора Гонория римляне окончательно отказались от мысли завоевать Британию и отправились восвояси навсегда.

.....

6. С тех пор как Цезарь высадился на острове, прошло 500 лет. За этот срок римляне, хотя и пролили много крови, сделали немало такого, что принесло пользу бриттам. Они построили

прекрасные военные дороги и крепости, научили бриттов красиво одеваться и сделали весь образ их жизни более утончённым.

.....

.....

.....

7. Именно в римские времена римские корабли привезли на Британские острова христианскую религию, и британцы впервые постигли великий завет.

.....

.....

8. Люди стали понимать, что друиды – обычные люди, а их благословения и проклятия никакой силы не имеют. Ученики стали покидать друидов.

.....

.....

.....

9. Повсюду в Англии сохраняются заросшие травой следы римских лагерей и могильники бриттов. Археологи нередко находят римские монеты, обломки блюд, кубков, остатки мостовых. Из колодцев, выкопанных римлянами, всё ещё можно брать воду.

.....

III. Watch the film “History of Britain – part I (Roman invasion)”. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it, using the following questions. Use the suggested expressions and your knowledge of history.

-Generally speaking it was typical for...

-I'm sure it was customary to...

-More than that...(более того...)

-I don't think it is / was really so...

-That's right. Exactly so.

-It may be so...

-It looks that way. But I'm not sure. I doubt.

1. Why did the Romans come here, to the edge of the world?
2. How did they know about the treasure?
3. What happened in 55 BC?
4. Were the Romans sure that they would win? Why?
5. What was the reason for their failure?
6. Who else besides J. Caesar conquered the Iron Age Britain?
7. Why was Claudius more successful in conquering Britain than J. Caesar?
8. Were all the British tribes satisfied with politics of the Roman nobility?
9. Who was Boudicca? Why was she angry with the Romans? How did she fight against them?

10. *How did modern archaeologists know the details of social life near the Roman frontier?*
11. *What was quintessential place representing Romano-British culture?*
12. *What did you know about Colchester?*
13. *What was the most faithful moment of Iron Age Britain?*
14. *Did any legions come to the British Isles after the Romans?*

Lesson 2

Rise of Towns in England

How towns appeared

The names of many modern English towns are of Latin origin. The Roman towns were strongly fortified and they were called 'castra' which means 'camps'. This word can be recognized in various forms in such names as **Chester, Winchester, Manchester, Leicester, Gloucester, Doncaster, Lancaster**. Any English town today with a name ending in 'chester', 'cester' or 'caster' was once a Roman camp or city. The town-name **Lincoln** comes from the Latin word 'colonia' which means a 'colony'; and **Colchester** (that is, colne-chester) from both – colonia – and – castra -. The city of Bath was an important Roman watering-place although it has lost its Roman name.

The few towns which had been built under the Romans in England were destroyed and abandoned by the Anglo-Saxons. The Anglo-Saxons were country dwellers. But the economic progress achieved during the early medieval period caused the growth of new towns in England.

During the early Middle Ages both agriculture and crafts gradually developed and became more productive. In the 10-11th centuries handicrafts began to separate from agriculture. The serf craftsmen wanted to make goods to order and for sale and some of them left their native villages. Sometimes they got the lord's permission to leave the manor but as before they were to pay the quit-rent with their articles. They would stroll from one village to another in search of customers. Many serf craftsmen would run away from the manor and settle in places where they could sell their articles and buy raw materials, foodstuffs, and other necessities of life. The settlements of runaway serfs gradually grew into towns.

Such towns sprang up at cross-roads where markets would be held and people would come from the surrounding countryside to buy and sell their animals and food, and merchants would come from far and wide to sell their goods. Often a peasant village on a lord's estate which was well situated at a cross-road or at a place where the main road crossed a wide river would become a trading spot. As time passed more and more merchants and craftsmen settled here. They built earthen walls round their settlement to protect themselves. Later on the earthen walls gave place to walls of stone. In this way many small centres of trade gradually grew into towns.

The runaway peasant craftsmen, working with wood, metal or leather would also settle near a monastery or a famous cathedral or near a feudal castle. They carried on a brisk trade with the feudal

lords, the clergymen and their servants. Merchants would build their dwellings here too as trade was always good where many people gathered. In time of danger the settlers could seek protection behind the stone walls of castles and monasteries. Towns grew up at places like **Bury St Edmunds, Canterbury** and **Durham** where there were great monasteries, cathedrals or castles.

It's interesting to note that almost all the towns were built on rivers which supplied the inhabitants with water and were an important means of communication. The town was built at some distance from the mouth of a river: a river port was safer from attack than a port on the coast. **Dover, Southampton, Plymouth, Boston** grew up as ports. **Grimsby, Scarborough** and **Yarmouth** grew up as fishing centres.

Many towns sprang up near bridges, like **Bristol** which grew up near the bridge over the Avon. But there were very few bridges and people had to cross a river by a ford or by a ferry. Near these places towns sprang up too. The names of many English towns end in 'ford'. Take **Oxford** for example, a town which grew up near a great ford for oxen driven for sale to the town. Thus the name 'Oxen-ford' later became Oxford. Such towns as **Cambridge, Hereford, Bedford** and many others grew up at places near big bridges or fords.

Medieval Towns

By the end of the 10th century new towns had sprung up in England. Such old towns as London, Winchester, York which had become small trading settlements after the Romans had left Britain also grew into centres of trade and craft. The Domesday Book¹ mentions about 80 towns where 5% of the population lived. In the 11th -12th centuries the towns were very small. London had only 20 000 people but it was considered a large centre of population. An average town had from six to four thousand people.

Notes

¹Domesday Book – is a written record of the ownership and value of land in England in 1086. It was made for William the Conqueror in order to calculate the size and value of the king's property and the tax value of other land in the country. The Book is of great historical importance because it tells us a lot about England at that time.

By the 13th century there were already more than 160 towns in England. But most of the towns were still quite small. There were only a few large centres of population, such as London, Bristol, Norwich and York. And there were many other towns which had less than a thousand people.

Most of these early towns didn't differ very much from the villages. They were surrounded by walls which had a number of gates, guarded by gate-keepers, who opened them at dawn and locked them at sunset. Along the whole length of the wall there were towers with loopholes – very narrow windows – through which the defenders of the town could shoot at the attacking enemies. Round many towns there were moats filled with water. You entered the town by the drawbridge over the moat and through a wide archway with very strong gates which were closed every night. Outside the town there were the fields which came right up to the walls of the town.

The medieval town grew in the small area within its walls. The buildings were crowded together and the streets were often very narrow. Many houses had two or three stories. There were many dark corners and backyards where robbers could lurk. The streets were not lit at night and the robbers would attack any passer-by who dared to be out late. It was the duty of the watchmen to go through the streets at night and ring a bell, calling out the time and the state of the weather. But the watchmen couldn't keep order in the streets; the back streets were dangerous even in broad daylight.

Near all the houses in the town were made of wood and frequent fires would destroy whole districts. Very few houses had their own water-supply. Special orders were issued to secure the safety of towns. With the last stroke of the church bell in the evening all the townspeople had to put out their fires and lights and the town used to sink in darkness.

The shops where different goods were sold were on the ground floor. As a rule all the shops of one trade were next to each other and this is still reflected in the names of such London streets as Milk Street, the Poultry, Fish Street and Haberdashers Row. Corn was for sale on Cornhill, meat in Butchers' Row, and hay in the Haymarket.

The workshop where the craftsmen worked was also on the ground floor and the owner and his family lived upstairs. The craftsmen of one occupation lived in their own district too. For example, tailors worked in Threadneedle Street and bakers in Bread Street.

There were no pavements at the sides of the street. The passer-by preferred to walk under the overhanging parts of the houses so as not to run the risks of being drenched with dirty water or hit by things thrown by a housewife out of a top window. Like in the villages it was a common thing to find poultry, dogs and even pigs grubbing among the refuse which lay rotting in the streets, giving off bad smells. There was no proper drainage system. It is not surprising therefore that such fatal diseases as the plague, cholera, fever and others were very common in medieval towns. Many people died from them. In fact, very few people lived till old age.

Markets

People from the country would come to the town markets to sell their surplus produce and to buy the townsmen's goods. The town market was held, as a rule, on a certain day of the week. The king's permission was needed before a market could be held. The king granted this permission to the town council or to the lord of the manor and the townsmen paid a lot of money to the king for his permission. The market owner took a toll on everything brought in for sale. The stalls in the market-place were rented to the traders. Even a countrywoman, who brought in a basket of butter or cheese to sell had to pay two pence for a place to stand in. Usually all the ordinary shops of the town were closed for market-day and most of their owners would rent a market stall for themselves too.

Before the market opened the quality of the goods and their prices were announced. Then the church bell rang and that was a sign that business might begin. Judges sat in a special court all day long ready to hear complaints and settle disputes. These market courts were often called pie-powder courts. The court was so-called probably because it was specially held at market places for the people with 'dusty feet', that is for those who came from long distances and often along very dusty roads. The pie-powder court settled all their disputes without delay which was of great advantage to the busy merchants. Special officials would go round and see that all was well. They tested the measures and weights. In case a merchant or a craftsman was caught giving short measure to customers he was punished on the spot. The important thing was to show up dishonest traders publicly so that people should know them and avoid them. For example, if a London baker sold a faked loaf of bread, empty inside, he was driven through the city in a cage with a loaf hanging from his neck, so that everyone could see that he had deceived the townspeople. Every market-place had its stocks in which the guilty once were forced to sit and a pillory in which a man was compelled to stand with his head and arms fixed, while people threw mud, stale eggs or rotten onions at him. The purpose of these punishments was to shame the guilty person by making him look ridiculous in the eyes of his friends and neighbours. But worst of all was the fact that the dishonest trader became a man with a bad reputation and the customers tried to avoid buying goods from him.

Fairs

Far more important and exciting than the weekly markets were the fairs. Fairs were held once a year and they lasted a week, or even two or three weeks.



The fairs could also be held only with a king's permission and not every town had one. The same sorts of preparations went on as for markets, but on a much grander scale. Whole streets of stalls were put up, and the site was fenced round so that no trader could get in without paying toll on his goods.

English merchants from all parts of the country came to the fair. Some of the fairs were very famous, not only in the British Isles but in foreign countries as well, and merchants from overseas came here to trade. The merchants from other towns and countries brought to the fair goods which were in high demand and sold them wholesale. Among the best known were the fairs in **London, Boston and Winchester**. At these fairs one could meet many foreigners: merchants from Flanders with fine cloth, merchants from the Baltic ports with furs, wax, iron and copper, merchants from

Spain and France sold wines, from Italy – silk, velvet. But most exciting of all were the merchants who brought goods from the East: spices (pepper, cloves, nutmeg and ginger), silk, pearls, and even monkeys.

Some fairs were specialized. There were horse fairs, cheese fairs, cloth fairs, wool fairs and others. And at every fair there were all sorts of amusements: puppets and dancing dolls amused the children, clowns and jugglers sent the crowds into roars of laughter, acrobats and performing animals were always a great attraction.

Here and there between the rows of merchants' shops there were small tables of money-changers. In England only Royal money was coined, but the king, feudal lords and the rich towns of foreign countries issued coins of different weights and the money-changers determined the real value of the coins and exchanged one currency for another.

Fairs were of great importance both in the development of domestic and foreign trade.

In medieval towns there were cobblers, tailors, blacksmiths, goldsmiths, butchers, bakers and a lot of other specialists. Specialists of different trades were united into corresponding **trade guilds**, which were a kind of professional associations or clubs. Members of a guild obeyed the rules of the guild. One of the rules was to sell the things they made at a fixed price. Nobody was allowed to sell his things cheaper than another member of the guild. The guilds took care of their members. When members fell ill and lost their trade, they received help. If they died, the guild paid for the funeral, supported the widow and educated the children.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- to abandon – покидать, оставлять
- Country-dweller – сельский житель
- handicraft – ремесло, ручная работа
- to make goods to order – производить товары на заказ
- serf – крепостной
- craftsman – ремесленник
- quit-rent – оброк
- to stroll – странствовать
- to spring up – возникать
- merchant – купец
- brisk – оживлённый
- clergyman – духовенство
- to lurk – прятаться
- watchman – ночной сторож
- to secure the safety – обеспечить безопасность
- poultry – домашняя птица
- haberdasher – галантерейщик
- butcher – мясник
- hay – сено
- tailor – портной
- baker – пекарь

-to drench – промачивать насквозь
 -rubbish – мусор
 -refuse – отбросы, мусор
 -to grub – рыться, копать
 -to rot – гнить
 -plague – чума
 -fever – лихорадка
 -surplus – излишек, остаток
 -toll – пошлина, сбор
 -stall – ларёк, палатка
 -pie-powder court – суд запыленных ног
 -faked – фальшивый, поддельный
 -to deceive – обманывать
 -stocks – колодки
 -pillory – позорный столб
 -to compel – заставлять
 -stale eggs – тухлые яйца
 -ridiculous – смешной, нелепый
 -to sell wholesale – продавать оптом
 -spice – пряность, специя
 -clove – гвоздика (пряная)
 -nutmeg – мускатный орех
 -ginger – имбирь
 -puppet – кукла-марионетка
 -clown – клоун
 -juggler – фокусник, жонглёр
 -to send smb. Into roars of laughter – сильно рассмешить кого-либо
 -performing animals – дрессированные животные
 -loophole – бойница
 -drawbridge – подъёмный мост
 -cobbler – сапожник
 -baker – булочник
 -blacksmith – кузнец

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Bury St Edmunds, Canterbury, Durham, Dover, Southampton, Plymouth, Boston, Grimsby, Scarborough, Yarmouth, Cambridge, Hereford, Bedford, Domesday Book.

VOCABULARY EXERCISE

Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- an occasion when people buy and sell goods; the open area or building where they meet to do this;
- a person whose job is cutting up and selling meat in a shop or killing animals for this purpose;
- an entertainer who wears funny clothes and a large red nose and does silly things to make people laugh;
- a person who makes, repairs or sells articles made of gold;

- a place with many houses, shops etc. where people live and work;
 - a person who buys and sells goods in large quantities, especially one who imports and exports goods;
 - a market at which animals were sold; an event at which people show and sell their goods a type of entertainment in a field or park at which people can ride and play games to win prizes;
 - a model of a person or an animal that can be made to move, for example by pulling strings attached to parts of its body or by putting your hand inside;
 - a person who repaired shoes in medieval period;
 - a person who was forced to live and work on land that belonged to a landowner whom they had to obey;
 - a person whose job is to make men's clothes, especially somebody who makes suits, jackets, etc. for individual customers;
 - chickens, ducks and geese, kept for their meat or eggs;
 - a skilled person, especially one who makes beautiful things by hand;
- (town, serf, craftsman, merchant, market, fair, poultry, butcher, tailor, puppet, clown, cobbler, goldsmith)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. How can we identify the names of the Roman towns built on the territory of England?
2. Why were the Roman towns destroyed and abandoned by the Anglo-Saxons?
3. How did towns begin to appear in England? What is the origin of their names?
4. Did early towns differ from the villages? How?
5. Describe early medieval towns?
6. How were the markets organized in the medieval towns?
7. What was the difference between markets and fairs?
8. Why were the fairs of great importance in the development of domestic and foreign trade?
9. What was the purpose of trade guilds?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

1. Suggest English equivalents for the Russian parts. Read the whole sentence and translate it into Russian.

1. The (крепостные ремесленники) wanted (выполнять товары на заказ и для продажи) and some of them left their native villages.

2. Early towns were surrounded by walls which had a number of (ворота), (охраняемые привратниками), who opened them (на рассвете) and locked them (на закате).

3. Like in the villages it was a common thing to find (домашняя птица), dogs and even pigs (ковыряясь в мусоре) which lay (загнивая) in the streets, (распространяя ужасные запахи).

4. Such (смертельные болезни) as the (чума), (холера), (лихорадка) and others were very common in medieval towns.

5. Every market-place had its (колодки) in which (виновные) once were forced to sit and (позорный столб) in which a man was compelled to stand with his head and arms fixed, while people (бросали в него грязь, тухлые яйца и гнилой лук).

II. Test-translation

1. Количество велосипедов позволяет предположить, что поблизости живёт много людей. Так и есть. Мы в известнейшем в мире университетском городке – Кембридже.

.....
.....
.....
.....

2. Студенты, воспитанные в довольно жёстких условиях Кембриджа, могут не волноваться за успех своей дальнейшей карьеры. Трудно сказать, помогает учиться необыкновенная средневековая атмосфера или же наоборот, только отвлекает. Однако, здесь намного спокойнее, чем в Оксфорде – другом элитном университетском центре Англии.

.....
.....

3. Яростные политические и религиозные дискуссии между жителями города и студентами не обошли стороной и Кембридж. Говорят, что даже сегодня городские и университетские власти недолголюбивают друг друга.

.....
.....

3. Гордость Кембриджа – его архитектура. Кроме замечательных зданий, университет славится великолепными церквями.

.....
.....

4. К выпускникам Оксфорда относится, по меньшей мере, половина британских премьер-министров и огромное количество политиков, улучшавших свои ораторские способности в легендарном дебат-клубе. Один из знаменитых оксфордских выпускников – бывший президент США Бил Клинтон.

.....
.....

5. В оксфордских библиотеках хранится богатое собрание богословских трудов. Объясняется это просто. На протяжении веков наука подчинялась церкви, и богословие считалось важнейшим из предметов.

.....
.....
.....
.....

III. Watch the film “Bath”. Translate the suggested video-information. Discuss it, using the following questions:

1. *What was Bath like in the 18 century?*
2. *What interesting buildings can we see in Bath today?*
3. *Where the English the first to enjoy the warm healthy water in Bath?*
4. *What is the main river in Bath?*
5. *What interesting places can you visit near Bath?*

Lesson 3

Modern England

Counties and Regions

SOUTHERN ENGLAND

THE SOUTH-WEST

Wiltshire, Avon

The Land

England occupies the largest part of the island of Great Britain. It occupies an area of 131, 8 thousand square km.

As concerns the relief, England can be divided into: Northern England mostly taken up by the low Pennine Mountains, the Central Plain, lowland South-east England, and hilly South-West England.

Economic regions

Historically England is divided into the following economic regions: the South Industrial and Agricultural region (the South of England), Central England or the Midlands, Lancashire, Yorkshire and Northern England. Each region has its own distinctive character, culture and history. Each region has its own government office and Regional Development Agency. The latter is responsible for encouraging inward investment and promoting initiatives to regenerate and develop the regions.

This part of the country is divided into **39 non-metropolitan**¹ and **7 metropolitan counties**.²

Southern England is dominated by London and the suburbs, which stretch for miles around the capital into what is called “home counties”.

Notes:

¹ non-metropolitan counties of England:

Northern England:

1. Northumberland
2. Cumbria
3. Durham
4. Cleveland
5. North Yorkshire
6. Lancashire
7. Humberside
8. Cheshire
9. Derbyshire

Central England:

10. Nottinghamshire
11. Warwickshire
12. Leicestershire
13. Northamptonshire
14. Buckinghamshire
15. Staffordshire

Southern England:

16. Lincolnshire
17. Salop
18. Norfolk
19. Hereford and Worcester
20. Cambridgeshire
21. Suffolk
22. Gloucestershire
23. Oxfordshire
24. Bedfordshire
25. Hertfordshire
26. Essex
27. Avon
28. Wiltshire
29. Berkshire
30. Greater London
31. Somerset
32. Hampshire
33. Surrey
34. Kent
35. Cornwall
36. Devon
37. Dorset
38. West Sussex
39. East Sussex

² ***metropolitan county*** – is each of six new administrative areas of Britain created in 1974. These were formed from large city areas which were separated from the counties they were formerly in. They are

Greater Manchester, Merseyside, Tyne and Wear, West Midlands, South Yorkshire, West Yorkshire. Each one was divided into ten districts and there were two systems of local government, county councils and district councils. In 1986 this system changed. County councils were abolished, leaving only district councils responsible for each district within the metropolitan counties.

The South of England is the most important region in the country in terms of industry, agriculture and population. This region includes both the South East and the South West. The region known as the South-west has an attractive image of rural beauty in British people's minds. There is some industry but farming is more widespread than it is in most other regions. The winters are so mild in some low-lying parts that it is even possible to grow palm trees.

The coastline of the Southwest of England stretches for 650 miles and has many different features: cliffs, sand, sheltered harbours, estuaries and marshes. It is not surprising that much of the activity in this region has been inspired by the sea. Side by side on the south coast of Hampshire are the two ports of

Portsmouth and Southampton.

Portsmouth is the main base of the Royal Navy, and its dockyard has a lot of interesting buildings and monuments. It's naval history goes back to 1194 when King Richard I ordered the construction of the first dock. There is also the Royal Naval Museum, where the main attraction is Horatio Nelson's flagship, the 'Victory' and 'Mary Rose', which was built at Portsmouth on the orders of Henry VIII. He was watching the ship sailing out with 60 others, when suddenly she sank for no apparent reason. Perhaps she was overloaded. Whatever the reason, she sank within minutes, and almost all of the 700 crew were drowned. The ship lay undisturbed in soft mud until the 1970s, when marine archaeologists and a team of divers began exploring the wreck. They discovered that the hull was complete and there was a huge variety of artefacts, for example clothes and shoes as well as pottery and metal and wooden objects.

The city is packed with reminders of England's naval heritage and attracts about 4.5 million visitors each year to its museums, castles, ships and beaches.

Many great sailors had associations with the South-West, for example Sir Walter Raleigh, the Elizabethan explorer, and Horatio Nelson. The most famous sailor of recent times, was Sir Francis Chichester, who returned to Plymouth after sailing round the world alone in 'Gypsy Moth'.

Southampton is one of Britain's most important ports. For much of the 20th century it was the main port for passenger ships crossing the Atlantic. Some passenger ships still use the port of Southampton, but it now deals mainly with container ships (ships that carry goods in large metal boxes).

Wiltshire

Wiltshire – is a county which consists mainly of agricultural land with the various landscapes, wooded valleys and rounded hills, quiet market towns, each with its unique character and individual importance steeped in historical interest.

Salisbury (New Sarum) – is a town in Wiltshire on the river Avon, built at the meeting-point of four river valleys. It's famous for its cathedral which has the highest spire (pointed tower) in Britain, and for the ancient remains at Old Sarum, the original place where the town was built, to the north of the present town. Buildings of all styles blend harmoniously – from medieval houses, historic inns and market places to modern shopping centre.

Salisbury Plain – is a large area of open land to the north and west of Salisbury in southern England. It's used by the British Army as a training ground, and also contains **Stonehenge** – an ancient circle of stones. It's the most inspiring sights in Britain. Perhaps the most famous, as well as the most mysterious, of all prehistoric monuments. There is nothing else quite like it anywhere in the world..

Two thousand years ago there was an Iron Age Celtic culture throughout the British Isles. It seems that the Celts, who had been arriving from Europe from the eighth century BC, intermingled with the peoples who were already there. Many religious sites that had been built long before the arrival of the Celts continued to be used in the Celtic period. Wiltshire has two spectacular examples of the astonishing monumental architecture of this period: **Silbury Hill**, the largest burial mound in Europe, and **Stonehenge**. Such places have a special importance for anyone interested in the cultural and religious practices. Some products of Neolithic enterprise were burial sites such as the **dolmens** of Brittany, where underground burial chambers were crowned by immense stone tables. The standing stones or **menhirs** found in Brittany and the British Isles pose more of a mystery.

Stonehenge was built on Salisbury Plain some time between 3050 and 2300 BC. It's one of the most famous and mysterious archaeological sites in the world. One of its mysteries is how it was ever built at

all with the technology of the time (the stones came from over 200 miles away in Wales.)



The stone-circle is made of many upright stones, standing in group of twos, 8.5 metres high. They are joined on the top by other flat stones, each weighing about 7 tons. No one

can tell how these large stones were moved. We don't know much about early people who lived in Britain long before a word of their history was written, but the archaeologists can learn something from their skeletons, their weapons and the remains of their dwellings which were found. These people (Iberians) used stone weapons and tools. The art of grinding and polishing stone was known to them, and they could make smooth objects of stone with sharp edges and points.

Stonehenge is still a mystery to scholars. What was it used for? - As a burial place or a sacred place where early man worshipped the sun? There are many theories about the purpose of this great construction. Perhaps it was used as **a temple of Druids** for ceremonies marking the passing of the seasons. They celebrated their religious ceremonies with the rising of the midsummer sun. The Druids were a Celtic religious group before the Norman Conquest. Some people believe that the Druids were a group of priests who practiced human sacrifice and cannibalism. It might have used as **a kind of astronomical clock**. It has always exerted a fascination on the British imagination, and appears in a number of novels, even in Shakespeare's comedies. One theory is that it was a place from where stars and planets could be observed. It was discovered that the position of some stones was related to the movements of the sun and moon, so that the stones could be used as **a calendar** to predict such things as eclipses.

Another theory is that the great stone circle was used to store terrestrial energy which was then generated across the country through the so-called 'ley lines', which are invisible channels for a special kind of power.

Besides the theories of scientists, there are local legends. One of them tells that Stonehenge was built by the devil in a single night. He flew forwards and backwards between Ireland and Salisbury Plain carrying huge stones one by one and setting them in place. As he worked, he laughed to himself. "That will make people think. They will never know how the stones came here!" But a friar was hiding in a ditch nearby. The devil saw the friar and threw a stone at him which hit the friar on the heel. The stone which the devil threw is known as 'the heel stone', and people will show it to you lying by the side of the road.

Whatever their purpose, the work involved in erecting them represents both a prodigious feat of engineering and a remarkable degree of social cohesion and communal organization.

These days Stonehenge is not only of interest for scholars, but for thousands of tourists. It's now fenced off to protect it from damage.

Avon

The county of **Avon** is famous for two cities – **Bristol** and **Bath**.

Bristol is the largest city in the west of England and used to be England's second city. It is situated at the junction of the rivers Avon and Frome. It's a major port and industrial centre. It's an ancient and it has always been a commercial place and has remained such to this day. Little is known of its early history but

its medieval trade was extended to Gascony, Spain and Portugal. Bristol was founded by the Saxons and has been known as a port since early times.

The city is proud of its strong links with the sea. Its prestige is reflected in splendid architecture, a rich maritime history and fine estates and parkland. Bristol is an artistic and creative centre with a buzzing nightlife

The story of Bristol is old through its rivers and locks. The Romans moored their boats on the river Avon, while the Normans shipped wine and other goods into Bristol by sea. In 1400 it was considered to be the second greatest port of England. Now it's eighth in the United Kingdom. It was an important port in the slave trade in the 17th and 18th centuries.

Once the second city in the land, Bristol is full of historic treasures, special colourful parks and miles of waterways. There is always something new to explore and discover. There are many ancient churches, museums around the city(e.g. an industrial museum with aircraft, cars, engines and the nose section of Concorde. Bristol has a large variety of industries, of which aircraft design, paper-making, printing.

Bristol is a University town. Its university was founded in 1876 first as a university college. Now there are flourishing colleges of science and technology, art and commerce.

Bath – is a city in south-west England, famous for its healthy mineral water and hot springs, its ancient Roman baths and beautiful **Georgian** buildings. As a Roman spa it drew visitors from all parts of the Empire. In the 18th century it became a setting for the civilized pleasures of that vigorous and sparkling age. Bath wasn't built for cars and chariots and carriages. It was built for people to enjoy on foot. It's a small city where you can wander, promenade as did Roman legionaries 2000 years ago.

Every visitor to Bath is given something rather special – the freedom of one of England's finest architectural showplaces. Bath is a busy city with all the amenities of the 20th century. There are many ancient remains and elegant buildings with the atmosphere in the air of a living museum which never closes.

Bath stands on the site of Britain's only hot springs, where every day a quarter of a million gallons of water gush out of the earth at a constant temperature of 48.9C.

The Romans put Bath on the map when, in honour of their goddess Minerva, they built one of the finest temples in Britain. They developed the hot springs as a sophisticated series of baths which were used not only for bathing and curative purposes but as a social centre as well. Significant finds from the Roman site were first recorded in the 18th century when the gilded head of Minerva was unearthed, but the discovery of the baths didn't really begin until 1878. Since then excavations, which continue today, have uncovered the most fascinating Roman remains in Britain. For 350 years Bath was a Roman health resort, and votive altars and magnificently carved fragments, the remains of temples, the goddess of the springs are preserved in the museum adjoining the Roman Baths.

The heart of the city is the restored 15th- century Abbey, and next to it are the social centers of the Pump Room, built over the Roman Temple site and the nearby Assembly Rooms. There are many handsome streets and such magnificent buildings as the **Royal Crescent, the Circus, Queen Square, Pulteney Street and the Parades** which are monuments of great architecture. John Wood, the great English architect of the 18th century designed many stately buildings, appreciated the natural beauties of the situation and realized the possibilities of Bath. Now his work gives us a lasting and incomparable charm.

Bath is called the “city of museums”. For the fine and decorative arts, don’t miss the **Victoria Art Gallery**. Housed in the Sydney Hotel built in 1796-1797, the museum contains a fine collection: collections of silver, porcelain, miniatures, glass, silhouettes, furniture.

The Crafts Study Centre opened in 1977 contains a collection of 20th century craftwork.

The American Museum is the only one in Britain dedicated to the history of the USA and includes 18 authentically furnished period rooms, extensive collection of American Indian Art. Two other collections are of international importance.

In the **Museum of Costume** there is the largest display of costume in the world. There is a Room for dolls and children’s toys here, as well as a superb collection of jewellery covering 200 years.

The Royal Photographic Society holds frequent exhibitions of contemporary photography worldwide, in addition to the **Museum of Photographic History**.

The Geology Museum is based on the work of Charles Moore, famous geologist of the 19th century. His collection contains a wealth of fossils from the Jurassic rocks of North Somerset.

Bath Carriage Museum contains the finest collection of horse-drawn carriages in the country in the 18th century. There are over 30 carriages, livery clothes, harness, and many more things from the coach era.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- county – графство
- marshes – болото, топь
- apparent – видимый, явный, очевидный
- wreck – крушение, авария; гибель, уничтожение
- artefact – предмет материальной культуры
- hull – корпус (корабля)
- to steep – погружать
- the ancient – древний народ
- spire – остроконечная верхушка, шпиль
- to blend – сочетаться, гармонизировать
- inspiring sights – воодушевляющие достопримечательности
- Iron Age – железный век
- to intermingle - перемешиваться

- religious sites – религиозные местонахождения
- ancient monument – старинный памятник
- the product of Neolithic enterprise – результат инициативы (предпринимательства) эпохи неолита
- burial site/mound – место захоронения, курган
- dolmen (underground burial chamber) - дольмен
- menhir (standing stones) - менгир
- isolated landmarks – отдельные объекты местности, вызывающие интерес
- religious significance – религиозная значимость
- prodigious feat of engineering – изумительный образец инженерного искусства
- social cohesion – социальная сплочённость
- spectacular examples – яркие примеры
- religious practices – религиозные обычаи
- to exert a fascination on the imagination – производить большое впечатление
- huge slabs – огромные плиты
- uprights – вертикальные колонны
- shape of horseshoe – форма подковы
- suppressed religious group – запрещённая религиозная группа
- human sacrifice – человеческое жертвоприношение
- beliefs and superstitions – верования и суеверия
- to predict eclipses – предсказать затмения
- to store terrestrial energy – запаса́ть земную энергию
- friar - священник
- skeletons and remains of dwellings – скелеты и остатки жилищ
- the art of grinding and polishing stones – искусство оттачивания и шлифовки камня
- smooth objects with sharp points – гладкие предметы с острыми наконечниками
- junction – место пересечения
- to moor – причалить, пришивартовываться
- spring – источник, родник, ключ
- spa – минеральный источник
- vigorous and sparkling age – сильная и блистательная эпоха
- chariot - колесница
- to promenade - прогуливаться
- amenities – благоприятные условия для отдыха на курорте
- to gush out – литься, фонтанировать
- curative purposes – целебные цели
- excavations – раскопки
- votive – исполненный по обету
- crescent – полумесяц, форма полумесяца
- porcelain – фарфор
- miniature – миниатюра
- fossils - ископаемые
- livery clothes – ливрейные костюмы
- harness – упряжь, сбруя

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Pennine Mountains, Lancashire, Yorkshire, Hampshire, Portsmouth, Southampton, Horatio Nelson, Walter Raleigh, Gypsy Moth, Wiltshire, Salisbury Plain, Stonehenge, Bristol, Bath, Pulteney Street.

VOCABULARY EXERCISE

Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a completely round flat shape;
 - a place where water with minerals in it, that is considered to be good for your health, comes up naturally out of the ground;
 - a very small detailed painting, often of a person; a very small copy or model of something;
 - one of the areas that a country is divided into, that has its own customs and its own government;
 - something that is difficult to understand or to explain;
 - the structure of bones that supports the body of a person or an animal;
 - an area of Britain, Ireland that has its own government;
 - a hard white shiny substance made by baking clay and used for making delicate cups, plates and ornaments;
 - the belief that particular events happen in a way that cannot be explained by reason or science; the belief that particular events bring good or bad luck;
 - a building used for the worship of a god or gods, especially in religions other than Christianity;
- (region, county, circle, mystery, temple, spa, superstition, skeleton, porcelain, miniature)**

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What are the main regions of England? How are they divided?
2. What are the main sights of Wiltshire?
3. What is Stonehenge? Why is it called one of the most mysterious archaeological sites of the world?
4. What are the most famous cities of Avon? What is the history of these cities? What are the main interesting places there to visit?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Suggest English equivalents for the Russian parts. Read the whole sentence and translate it into Russian.

1. It seems that the Celts (*перемешались с народами*) who were already there.
2. (*Искусство оттачивания и шлифования камня*) was known to them, and they could make (*гладкие предметы*) of stone with (*sharp edges*) and points.
3. Another theory is that the great stone circle was used to (*запасать земную энергию*).
4. The (*дьявол*) saw (*монах*) and (*бросил в него камень*) which (*попал монаху в пятку*).

5. Whatever their purpose, the work involved in erecting them represents both a **(изумительный образец инженерного искусства)** and a **(потрясающая степень социальной сплочённости и общинной организации)**.

6. The ship lay **(спокойно)** in soft mud until the 1970s, when **(морские археологи и команда водолазов)** began exploring the **(крушение)**.

II. Test-translation.

1. Stonehenge – самое известное в Европе мегалитическое сооружение. Многие века этот ансамбль восхищает и смущает умы не только исследователей древних культур, но даже физиков, занимающихся статикой.

.....
.....
.....

2. Назначение постройки до сих пор не установлено. Расположение камней позволяет думать, что строители имели глубокие астрономические и математические познания.

.....
.....
.....

3. Древние считали, что форма круга имеет магическое значение. У круга нет ни начала, ни конца. Круг – символ совершенства и вечности. Вероятно, и строители Стоунхенджа уже предугадывали магический смысл круга, знали о его завораживающем влиянии на сознание людей, наконец, верили в его магические возможности...

.....
.....
.....

4. Стоунхендж строили не великаны, а обычные люди, жившие пять-три тысячи лет назад. Такие древнейшие сооружения из огромных каменных глыб называются **мегалитическими**. Название это произведено от двух греческих слов «мега» - огромный, сверхбольшой – и «литос» (камень). Гигантские камни, врытые в землю и стоящие вертикально, называются **менгирами**. Вертикально поставленные камни, перекрытые каменной плитой, - **дольменами**. А сами грандиозные сооружения, состоящие из менгиров, дольменов, валов, называются **кромlechами**.

.....
.....
.....

5. Однако когда начинали сооружать Стоунхендж, его строители еще не знали меди. Рвы и ямы для установки камней рыли кирками из оленьего рога, каменными лопатами. Строители также применяли каменные молоты разных размеров. Некоторые молоты весили до 30 кг.

.....
.....
.....

6. Огромные камни доставлялись из гористой местности в 200 километрах от долины. Камни сначала грузили на плоты, везли их по морю и рекам, а затем волоком тащили в долину, для этого использовали тягловый скот.

.....
.....
.....
7. Древние люди возвели это сложное и прекрасное сооружение, чтобы молиться и приносить жертвы своим богам. Об этом свидетельствует то, что в Стоунхендже были найдены специальные ямы для ритуальных жертв. В центре круга Голубых камней находится алтарь-жертвенник. Голубые камни считались магическими, обладающими волшебной силой.
.....
.....
.....

8. Стоунхендж при всей своей уникальности не одинок. Мегалитические комплексы можно увидеть в северо-западной Франции, в Северной Африке, на Кавказе и в других местах. Ещё более древними, чем Стоунхендж, являются мегалитические сооружения на островах Мальта и Гозо.
.....
.....
.....

III. Watch the film “Stonehenge”. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian.

Lesson 4

SOUTHERN ENGLAND

THE WEST COUNTRY

Devonshire, Cornwall

Devonshire

The counties of **Devon**, **Cornwall** and **Somerset** are often called **the West Country**. They have always been popular with holiday-makers, so there are a large number of hotels, caravan-and-camping-sites and private houses and farms which offer bed and breakfast. People enjoy going there because of the beautiful countryside, where they can ‘get away from it all’, and because the coastline offers the best beaches and surfing in England. The coast is very popular with surfers because of the large Atlantic waves. Also, the weather is usually warmer than in the rest of the country.

The principle industries here are farming and tourism. Although there are some very big farms, most are small family farms with a mixture of cows, sheep and cereal crops. The main emphasis is on dairy products – milk and butter.

The county of Devonshire is one of England's biggest counties. It is situated in south-west England. The administrative centre is **Exeter**. Exeter is one of the chief cities of the county and one of the most historic cities of Britain. It's the administrative centre for Devon on the south west peninsula. The city lies at the heart of some of England's most spectacular scenery – close to the sea - '**Dartmoor**'¹ and '**Exmoor**'² National Parks.

Notes:

¹**Dartmoor** – a bleak region of moors and hills in Devon, through which flows the river Dart. It is a wild, open and hilly part of Devon. It is a National Park and a popular place for walking and horseriding. **Dartmoor ponies** – are small, dark brown horses with long hair that live wild on Dartmoor. Parts of Dartmoor are also used for military exercises.

²**Exmoor** – is a high land that is not cultivated. It's a National Park. The Exmoor pony is often trained for children to ride.

Exeter also has strong maritime connections and its quay, constructed during the reign of Elizabeth I in the 1600s, was once the focus of booming international trade. At the centre of the city is the 850-year-old ornate gothic cathedral, one of England's finest Cathedrals, surrounded by a beautifully preserved close. It is a popular area for holidays.

The surrounding Devon countryside is one of England's richest areas of pastureland and is famous for its thick cream and cream cheese. Devonshire is also famous for **Plymouth**, one of the largest cities of the West Country. The centre of the city was almost obliterated during the Second World War.

Plymouth has been a noted seaport since the 13th c. During the Hundred Years' War, (between England and France 1337-1453) many ships sailed from here against the French and later it was the port.

The Pilgrim Fathers sailed from Plymouth to America in the "Mayflower" in 1620. In 1772 James Cook departed from Plymouth on his great 3-year circumnavigation of the world.

During the Second World War Plymouth was heavily bombed and the modern city centre is less than 40 years old.

The entrance to Plymouth harbour is guarded by the Eddystone Lighthouse.

Outside the city is a large and beautiful national park "Dartmoor", and Plymouth is only a few miles from some of the most beautiful beaches in Britain. During the summer thousands of tourists come to the area and use Plymouth as a centre for exploring the counties of Devon and Cornwall.

Sir Francis Drake (1540-1596)

Sir Francis Drake is one of the most famous of English sailors and pirates who fought against the Spanish and was the first Englishman to sail around the world.

He was born in **Plymouth**, a seaport and the largest town in the south of England. The boy spent much of his time looking at the ships in Plymouth harbour and talking to the seamen. At fifteen he was taken on a small ship and worked there for some years. The boy learnt the duties of a sailor very soon and

did his work so well that people said that he was a born sailor. When Drake was twenty five, he was made a captain's mate, and soon after the captain of a ship.

Sea-battles between English and Spanish ships were common at that time. After a career attacking and robbing Spanish ships in the Caribbean, he was given five ships by Queen Elizabeth I to sail around the world, attacking Spanish ships along the way. Francis Drake sailed off from Plymouth. He crossed the Atlantic, passed through **the Strait of Magellan** and reached **Cape Horn**, the southernmost point of South America.



After a short rest the ships sailed north all along the west coast of **South, Central and North America**. Leaving **North America**, Drake crossed **the Pacific** and visited the island of **Java**, in the south of Asia. After that he sailed across **the Indian Ocean to the Cape of Good Hope**, where he came in June 1580.

Sailing along the west coast of **Africa**, Drake visited **the Canary Islands**, then sailed on and in September 1580 he returned to England.

The voyage lasted nearly three years. When he returned in the only surviving ship, 'The Golden Hind', Queen Elizabeth I made him a knight.

In 1588 Francis Drake distinguished himself in the sea-battle against **the Spanish Armada**¹ in the English Channel.

Notes:

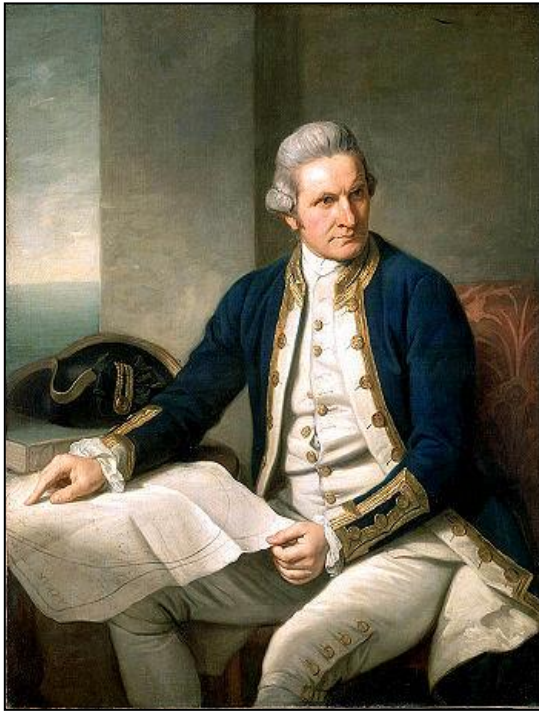
*¹**the Spanish Armada** – the group of 129 ships sent by Spain in 1588 to attack England. It was the first sea battle in history involving large numbers of ships, and was seen by the English as a great victory. The word 'armada' is now often used to mean any large group of ships.*

Seven years after the victory over the Spanish Armada, in 1595, Drake, at the head of a large fleet, sailed from Plymouth again to attack the Spaniards in America and the West Indies. The Atlantic was crossed in a month, but soon afterwards Drake fell ill. In January 1596 he died and was buried in the sea. There is a monument to Francis Drake in Plymouth.

James Cook (1728-1779)

James Cook was an English sailor and explorer who made three journeys by sea to the Pacific Ocean. He was the first European to arrive on **the east coast of Australia**. He drew maps of the coasts of **Australia, New Zealand and New Guinea**. He was also the first European to arrive at **Hawaii**.

James Cook was born in Yorkshire on October 27, 1728. At the age of eighteen he took his first voyage as an apprentice on board a ship. In 1755 he enlisted in the Royal Navy as an able seaman and was sent to the American coast. While charting the coast of Newfoundland, Cook mastered the skills of a mapmaker.



Cook's first round-the-world voyage took place in 1768-1771. On board 'The Endeavour' he sailed round **Cape Horn** and explored **the South Pacific**. He discovered several islands in the South Pacific, sailed around both islands of **New Zealand** and explored the eastern coast of **Australia**.

The second voyage was undertaken in search of **the Southern Continent**. There were two ships. This voyage demonstrated the outstanding skills and experience of Cook as a seaman and a captain. Cook did more than any other man of his time to promote the health of his crew. In those times lots of sailors on long voyages died of scurvy because of the lack of vitamins in food and bad hygiene. Cook made his men wash every day and air their beds; he made his men eat sauerkraut. His second voyage lasted three years and eighteen days. Out of 112 men Cook lost four, among whom only one died of an illness.

The purpose of Cook's third voyage was to look for **the Northwest Passage** (between the Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans) from the Pacific side. Cook sailed around Africa and across the Indian Ocean into the Pacific. Then he sailed round the tip of **the Alaska Peninsula**, through **the Bering Strait** and into **the Arctic Ocean**, where they were stopped by thick ice. After spending there as much time as he could, Cook turned south to reload and repair the ships for the next year.

But he never returned to the Bering Strait. Captain Cook met his death on **the Hawaiian Islands** where he and his crew were attacked by the natives on February 14, 1779.

Cornwall

Cornwall is a region at the south-west tip of England and a unique and ancient Celtic land with a magnificent indented coastline, which is infamous because the 'foot' of Cornwall has the worst of the winter gales, and in recorded history there have been more than fifteen shipwrecks for every mile of coastline. There is even a shipwreck centre and museum where you can see an amazing collection of items that have been taken from wrecks over the years. There are a lot of stories about Cornish 'wreckers' who, it is said, tied lanterns to the tails of cows on cliff-tops or put them on lonely beaches when the weather was bad, so that ships would sail towards the lights and break up on the dangerous rocks near the coast. The wreckers would then be able to steal anything valuable that was washed up on to the shore.

Cornwall is popular among the tourists who are attracted by good bathing and delightful surroundings. Cornwall is a historically distinct part of Britain, with its own Celtic language – Cornish.

There are between 120 and 130 offshore islands which can be classified as part of England's natural geography. Some are privately owned, some are inhabited, while others are only known to lighthouse-keepers, sailors and naturalists. The attraction of these islands is different to different people. Ornithologists for example might want to study a rare seabird; archaeologists might be interested in a prehistoric or early Christian site; sociologists might study why certain islands have been deserted or resettled. The most famous islands off the south coast are **the Isle of Wight, the Isles of Scilly, St Michael's Mount and Lundy**.

The Isle of Wight is the largest island off the south coast. Charles I was once imprisoned here, and there is a large prison on the island today. A lot of its attractive scenery has formed as a result of a thick layer of chalk.

Many of the inhabitants travel daily to the mainland to work. Those who work on the island are usually involved with the tourist industry because the island is visited by thousands of tourists every year. A favourite activity is yachting.

Cornwall forms a county together with the **Scilly Isles**. It is a group of about 140 small islands. Some are just large rocks but only six are inhabited. The capital is Hugh Town on the island of St Mary's. The Scillies have a mild climate and are popular for holidays. In early spring, they export beautiful flowers to the mainland.

Cornwall was used to produce a lot of tin, but there are now very few tin mines left. Its scenery, sandy beaches and mild climate now make it popular with tourists. The administrative centre is **Truro**.

The north coast, washed by Atlantic breakers, has wonderful stretches of golden sands and soaring cliffs.

The south coast is a complete contrast – wooded estuaries, sheltered coves, picturesque little fishing ports and popular resorts. **Penzance** with its vivid colours is an all-the –year – round resort and has wonderful views across the bay to **St.Michael's Mount**.

St.Michael's Mount is linked to the mainland at low tide by a causeway. It was a base for the tin trade at one time, and because of its religious connection with Mont-Saint-Michel in France, it was also a trading and migration centre from the earliest days of Christianity.

Finally, between the coast of Devon and South Wales is the island of **Lundy**, which is three miles long and half a mile wide. At one time it was almost a pirate kingdom, but today it is a bird sanctuary, with a resident human population of about twelve.

Inland Cornwall also has its attractions. To the east of Bodmin, the county town, are open uplands known as Bodmin Moor. The historic town of **Launceston** is dominated by its ruined castle.

Cornwall has the longest coastline of any English county and it can claim the largest quota among the major lighthouses of England. In Cornwall there are 11 important lighthouses.

According to the Chronicle “ **Historia Regum Britanniae**”¹, a village, near the north coast of Cornwall, was the residence of King Arthur (**Tintagel castle**), the legendary commander who led the Celts to victory against the invading Angles and Saxons. If the chronicle is to be believed, King Arthur died in his castle in 542, but no other facts about his life have since come to light.

Notes:

¹**Historia Regum Britanniae** - (свод королей, живших в Британии за период 1900 лет). It dates from 1136 and was written by Geoffrey of Monmouth, Tintagel.

Eden Project is a large area (35 football pitches) in Cornwall which contains plants from all over the world. The project was opened to the public in 2001 and has become very popular with visitors. Originally a china clay mine, the 60-metre-deep crater became home to thousands of important and



beautiful plants. Some growing outside and others in three very large transparent glass-domed conservatories called ‘**biomes**’. The domes are

vast (over 200 metres high). Each one represents one of the world’s climate zones: rainforests and Oceanic Islands; warm temperature regions (the Mediterranean, South Africa and California) and temperature zone that enjoys Cornwall particular climate.

The Eden Project aims especially to show people the natural resources which come from plants and their importance to people’s lives.

Land’s End is the extreme southwest point of England and a popular tourist attraction. The point furthest to the south is the Lizard, a piece of land that sticks out into the sea in southern Cornwall. John o’Groats is the point furthest to the north in Scotland. This is a village in north-east Scotland. The name may come from that of Jan de Groot, a Dutchman who is said to have lived there in the 15th century. The phrase “from Land’s End to John o’Groats” is used to mean ‘all over Britain’: “He was known from Land’s End to John o’Groats.”

Land's End is a mass of granite cliffs which plunge into the sea. Not even the crowds of people and the cars which bring them can dispel the fascinating atmosphere of the place. For those , who want to breathe in the Celtic "wilderness" of Land's End to the full, the best time are dawn and dusk. Especially fine is the view of the **Longships Lighthouse** on a rock 1.5 miles out to sea. The area is rich in prehistoric remains. There are the ruins of dwellings more than 2000 years old, evidence of one of the earliest mining settlements in Britain.

Somerset is a county in south-west England. It consists mainly of agricultural land, and is well-known for its cider (an alcoholic drink made from apples produced there). It's administrative centre is **Taunton**.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules

- holiday-makers – отдыхающий, турист, отпускник
- cereal crops – урожаи зерновых
- quay – причал, набережная
- to obliterate – уничтожать; изглаживать
- Pilgrim Fathers – английские колонисты, поселившиеся в Америке
- circumnavigation – кругосветное плавание
- captain's mate – помощник капитана (в торговом флоте)
- apprentice – ученик, подмастерье
- to enlist – поступить на военную службу
- to chart – наносить на карту
- scurvy - цинга
- hygiene - гигиена
- sauerkraut – квашеная капуста
- tip – верхушка
- indented coastline – изрезанная береговая линия
- gale – шторм, буря
- break up – разбивать вдребезги
- was- up - что-то выкинутое на берег
- breaker – бурун
- stretch – пространство
- soaring cliffs – возвышающиеся, парящие клифы
- sheltered coves – бухты, дающие приют
- bay – залив, бухта
- convincing evidence – убедительное доказательство
- plunge – погружение
- causeway – дамба, мостовая
- bird sanctuary – птичий заповедник; прибежище
- crater – кратер, воронка
- conservatory – оранжерея, теплица
- to dispel – разгонять, рассеивать
- dawn – рассвет
- dusk – сумерки

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Devon, Cornwall, Somerset, Exeter, Dartmoor, Exmoor, Plymouth, Eddystone Lighthouse. Caribbean, the Strait of Magellan, Cape Horn, Java, the Canary Islands, Australia, New Zealand and, New Guinea, Hawaii, Yorkshire, the Alaska Peninsula the Bering Strait, the Arctic Ocean, the Isle of Wight, the Isles of Scilly, St Michael's Mount, Lundy, Hugh Town, Launceston, Penzance, Lizard, Land's End, Truro, Tintagel, Bodmin, Mediterranean.

VOCABULARY EXERCISE

Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a person who works on a ship as a member of the crew;
 - a town with a harbor used by large ships;
 - a long journey especially by sea or in space;
 - an alcoholic drink made from the juice of apples (dry and sweet);
 - a person who is visiting a place on holiday / vacation;
 - sailing all the way around the world;
 - the loss or destruction of a ship at sea because of a storm or because it hits rocks;
 - an area of land that is almost surrounded by water but is joined to a larger piece of land;
 - an extremely strong wind;
 - a person on a ship who attacks other ships at sea in order to steal from them (especially in the past);
 - an area of land, and the buildings on it, used for growing crops and keeping animals;
 - a tower or other building that contains a strong light to warn and guide ships near the coast;
- (holiday-maker, pirate, sailor, farm, peninsular, seaport, circumnavigation, lighthouse, voyage, gale, shipwreck, cider)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Where is Devonshire situated, in what part of England?
2. What is its countryside famous for? What is the most delicious dish in Devon?
3. What did you know about Plymouth? Why is this seaport so famous?
4. Who was Sir Francis Drake?
5. What are the most picturesque places in Devon? What attracts tourists to this area?
6. Why is the coastline of Cornwall considered to be infamous and dangerous for sailors?
7. Why is Cornwall popular among the tourists?
8. What are the main islands off the south coast? What islands is part of Cornwall? Whom do they usually attract tourists or scientists?
9. What interesting places does inland Cornwall have?
10. What is the aim of the Eden Project?
11. What is the extreme southwest point of England? Why is it a popular tourist attraction?
12. What are the main features of Somerset?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Suggest English equivalents for the Russian parts. Read the whole sentence and translate it into Russian.

1. He crossed (*Атлантический океан*) passed through (*Магелланов пролив*) and reached (*мыс Горн*) (*самая южная точка*) of South America.

9. He drew maps of the coasts of (*Австралия, Новая Зеландия и Новая Гвинея*).

10. In those times lots of sailors on long voyages died of (*цинга*) because of (*недостаток витаминов*) in food and bad (*гигиена*).

11. (*Орнитологи*) for example might want to study (*редкие морские птицы*).

12. The south coast is a complete contrast – (*лесистые устья, дающие приют бухты, маленькие живописные рыбные порты*) and popular (*курорты*).

13. Some growing outside and others in three very large (*прозрачные стеклянные куполовидные оранжереи*).

14. Land's End is a (*скопление гранитных скал*) which (*погружаться*) into the sea.

II. Test-translation.

1. Корнуолл – это край кельтов. Память о них здесь ещё жива. Вдоль побережья Корнуолла рассыпаны десятки милых рыбацких деревушек.

.....
.....
.....

2. На вершине холма стоят развалины замка Тинтажель, в котором, по преданию, родился и вырос король Артур. Однако, твердыня построена в 13 веке, т.е. через 700 лет после смерти легендарного правителя.

.....
.....
.....

3. Исследователи готовы лишь признать, что прообразом короля Артура был римско-британский воин. Он возглавил восстание местного населения против саксов в 6 веке.

.....
.....
.....

4. Плимут был важным портом уже в 14 веке. Отсюда английские корабли выходили на сражения столетней войны с Францией. Позже из Плимута отправлялись в путь Дж. Кук, Роберт Скотт и Чарльз Дарвин.

.....
.....
.....

5. В 1620 году из Плимута к Новому Свету отправился корабль 'Mayflower'. Удачей обернулось бегство сотни протестантов, названных впоследствии отцами-паломниками. Преследуемые в Англии сектанты положили начало колонизации Северной Америки.

.....

.....

III. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it, using the following questions:

- 1. What is the chief city of the county?*
- 2. Why did Spanish ships attack England?*
- 3. What happened in the early 17th c? Who were religious refugees?*
- 4. Can you prove that Plymouth is interesting city to visit and is ready to welcome a lot of tourists?*
- 5. What did you know about Salkombe?*
- 6. What is the local drink in Devon? Describe a traditional process of scrumpy?*

IV. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it, using the following questions:

- 15. What is St Michael's Mount?*
- 16. What is the most important industry on Cornwall?*
- 17. Why is a small seaside town St. Ives so popular with tourists and artists?*

Lesson 5

THE SOUTHEAST

EAST ANGLIA

Kent, Sussex, Cambridgeshire, Norfolk etc.

When you travel to Britain by sea or air, it is very likely that you will arrive in the Southeast, for this is where the main passenger ports and airports (Heathrow Airport, Gatwick) are located.

The South-East is the largest and more highly developed region with London and the Greater London area as the major centres. The area surrounding the outer suburbs of London has the reputation of being 'commuter land'. This is the most densely populated area in England which does not include a large city, and millions of its inhabitants travel into London to work every day.

There is still attractive countryside to be found in all counties outside the influence of London. The south coast has a mild and sunny climate which makes it popular with both holiday-makers and the elderly, who find it a comfortable area to retire to.

Employment in the south-east of England is mainly in trade, the provision of services and light manufacturing. There is little heavy industry.

Kent

Southern England is dominated by London and the suburbs, which stretch for miles around the capital into what is called “home counties”. **Kent** is one of these counties. The areas of apple and cherry, different types of fruit and vegetables, hops (plants used in making beer, Britain’s most popular alcoholic drink!) earned Kent its nickname “**The Garden of England**”. Kent has excelled in fruit growing since the Romans first planted orchards and vineyards there. Its fertile soil, mild climate and regular rainfall ensure top quality and make ideal growing conditions.

The fruit is harvested in early autumn, and in the past people used to come from London in large numbers to pick hops. They often used to come in family groups and stay in specially organized accommodation. They didn’t think it was hard work, for it was like a holiday with pay.

Nowadays, most people in the area have jobs which include paid holidays, so it is not such a popular activity.

Near the hop gardens are the oast-houses in which the hops are dried. They are of a very unusual design and are a very familiar sight of Kent.

These days, farmers have found that it is more economical to dry the hops in factories. Many of the oast-houses have been converted into fashionable houses.

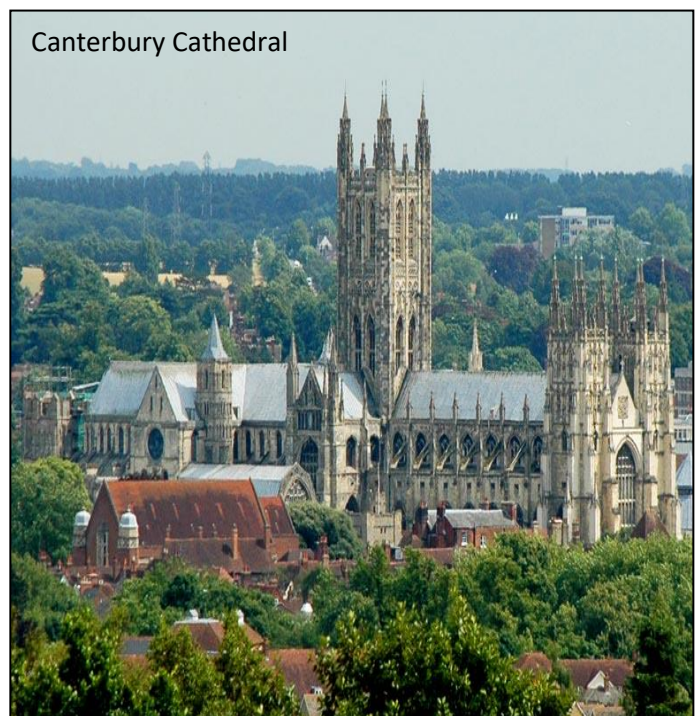
Canterbury is a town in Kent with a population of about 120 000. It’s one of the oldest in England. It’s situated on the river Stour, at the heart of an agricultural region. It was a busy market town.

Canterbury is the religious capital of England because its cathedral is the seat of the Archbishop of Canterbury who is head of the Church of England.

From the 12th to the 15th century, it was a place of pilgrimage. Thousands of people came to pray at the shrine of a former Archbishop of Canterbury who was murdered in the Cathedral in 1170. His name was Thomas Becket.

On the Southeast coast of Kent lies Dover, the chief of the Ports. Much of Dover has been rebuilt since the Second World War. It is an efficient port now, with handsomely built modern passenger terminals.

The administrative centre of Kent is **Maidstone**. Today Maidstone is famous for **Leeds Castle**, one of the most beautiful castles in the world. It is one of romantic and most ancient castles in the Kingdom, it



was named after Led, Chief Minister of Ethelbert IV, King of Kent in AD 857. Originally a Norman stronghold, it was later enriched and enlarged by Henry VIII. A Royal residence for over 300 years, the Castle was a favourite home for six of England's medieval Queens. Now restored and beautifully furnished, it contains a magnificent collection of medieval furnishings, French and English furniture, paintings, tapestries and treasures.

Sussex

Sussex is a former county on the coast of south-east England. In 1974 it was divided into the smaller administrative counties: **East Sussex and West Sussex**.

West Sussex is a county in southern England created with administrative centre in the town of **Chichester**. It's known for its 18th century architecture and for the Chichester Festival- a theatre festival that takes place every summer.

The administrative centre of East Sussex is **Lewes**. The most famous cities of this county are **Brighton and Hastings**.

Brighton is one of the most elegant and celebrating bathing resorts on the coast of East Sussex. Combining old-style charm with all the latest amenities and superb shopping centers Brighton offers



everything in style. It became a fashionable place for people to swim, and it is still a popular place for people to spend their holidays. It's famous for its **Regency architecture, the Royal Pavilion and the Palace Pier**.¹

The Royal Pavilion (or the Brighton Pavilion) – was built by **George IV**² as his marine palace. Its exotic

Indian architecture is an essential treat for any visitor.

Notes:

¹**Pier** – is a long structure, usually made of wood and iron, built out into the sea, lake or river. Piers were originally built so that people could walk along them to get on boats at the end, or load or unload

goods, but in the 19th century many British seaside towns built large piers for pleasure, often with theatres, restaurants and entertainments on them and some of them are still popular tourist attractions, especially in Brighton.

²**George IV** – was king of Great Britain and Ireland (1820-1830). Before becoming king, he ruled as Prince Regent because his father George III was ill. He had many lovers and shocked many people by the way he lived, spending a lot of time eating, drinking and gambling.

The Palace was designed by John Nash (1752-1835) an English architect. He also designed **Trafalgar Square, St. James's Park** and **the Marble Arch** in London. It was completed in 1820. The rooms are mainly in a Chinese style. It is now kept as a museum.

A walk around the picturesque Lanes reveals a wealth of antique shops, designer shops and cafes. And don't forget to see the fabulous pier with its lively entertainments and superb views back over the town. Brighton Pier is a popular place to spend a few hours, especially if the weather is not good enough to stay on the beach.

Brighton is also well known as a conference centre, and the major political parties may hold their conferences there in the autumn.

Hastings was one of the five Ports and a base of the Royal Fleet. It was here that the crucial battle between the English army under king **Harrold**³ and the invading troops of William, Duke of Normandy, took place on October 14th 1066 – the most celebrated date in English history. The Normans defeated the Saxons, killed King Harold and conquered England. The Norman duke William became King William I, or **William the Conqueror**.

Notes:

³**King Harold** – was the last Anglo-Saxon king of England.

East Anglia

The name 'East Anglia' is more an administrative convenience than a term of geographical accuracy, as the area concerned is one that encompasses the highly diverse counties of **Essex, Cambridgeshire, Norfolk, Suffolk**. To savour the rich diversity of accent, architecture, historical background, landscape and custom would take much more time than the average visitor can spare.

East Anglia is extremely flat, and it is dominated by agriculture. It has beautiful cities with fine historic buildings: **Cambridge, Norwich, Peterborough and Colchester**. It has many sandy beaches and inland waterways.

In the medieval times, it became rich because of the wool trade. It was not affected by the industrial revolution, and even today there is very little heavy industry. It was the home of the agricultural revolution and now is best known as a farming region.

It's rather isolated from the rest of Britain because of its position away from the main national routes and because of its shape. It is more than half surrounded by sea.

East Anglia remains a region of villages, isolated farmsteads and small market towns. Some times ago the villages were more numerous than they are today, for parts of East Anglia suffered from depopulation. Most of the towns of East Anglia have little tendency to grow.

It's an agricultural area, producing a lot of grain. Barley and wheat, oats, potatoes, sugar-beet are the most extensive crops. The number of cattle and sheep is low. Once East Anglia was the major wool textile area. But now sheep have almost disappeared from East Anglia. Poultry is numerous and Norfolk turkeys have a high reputation in the Christmas market.

Essex

The county of Essex is a region of beauty and peace, with its roots deep in English history. The oldest recorded town in Essex and in England is **Colchester**. The town was inhabited as early as the Bronze Age and is thus 3 000 years old. Its strategically favourable location induced Cunobelin to set up his capital town here. Claudius took over this residence in AD 44 and established the first Roman colony in Britain. The Romans were followed by the Saxons. The Danes repeatedly plundered the settlement in the 9th and 10th centuries, until in 1085 William the Conqueror built the castle, which at that time had Europe's largest keep. Interesting remains survive from the past.

Walk towards the town centre along Balmerne Passage and you can't miss 'Jumbo', the town's most famous landmark. It is a Victorian water-tower which took its name from a famous elephant sold to a circus in 1882, the year of the tower's construction.

Here you can see some fine medieval and Georgian houses, most of which have been restored. This area is known as the Dutch Quarter because it is where Flemish weavers lived when they fled from the Netherlands in the 16th century. They helped to improve the Colchester cloth industry.

Near St Helen's Chapel are the remains of one of the walls of a Roman Theatre.

There is a Castle, which dates from the 11th century. It was built on the site of a Roman temple. Now there is a museum inside, where you will find a wonderful collection of Roman antiquities and a lot of information about Roman Colchester.

Of course there are many other interesting places to visit in this historic town, but no doubt by now you will be ready to return to the Town Centre in search of tea and cakes.

Cambridgeshire

Cambridgeshire is a county in the south-east of England. The glory of Cambridgeshire is **Cambridge**. It has been described as the loveliest city in Britain with the magnificent courtyards, the bridges along the river **Cam** and above all, the wealth of architectural styles to be admired. The history of Cambridge dates back to Neolithic times and relics can still be seen in the **Museum of Archeology and**

Anthropology. There was a settlement here in Roman times and later came the Saxons and the Normans. But the growth of the city began over 900 years ago when it proposed as a trading route between eastern and central England. It soon became a teaching centre for scholars from neighbouring monasteries, and by the 13th century the University came into being. During the next 700 years many foundations have been established which today represent superb examples of medieval and later styles of architecture. The oldest colleges and University buildings which are situated in the central area of Cambridge, are all within easy walking distance of each other. Today 31 colleges are attached to the University, each a separate self-governing body, each with its own style and character. Among the most beautiful are **Queen's, Trinity, Magdalene and King's Colleges.**

King's College Chapel is the city's crowning glory – a superb example of Perpendicular architecture (1446-1525). Its interior is perfectly proportioned with wonderful 16th century stained glass and a magnificent Gothic-style fan-vault ceiling. Not all college architecture is centuries old. There are many new colleges including Churchill (1959-1968), New Hall (1962-1966), Robinson (1978-1981) and Clare Hall (1966-1969).

In addition many new and functional buildings have been added to the ancient colleges. Among these are the impressive **Memorial Court** and **the University library.** As a major cultural centre Cambridge has a splendid selection of important museums. Visitors to the **Fitzwilliam Museum** find collections of great variety. In it there are mummies, sarcophagi from ancient Egypt, ancient Greek and Roman art, English pottery and glass, Chinese ceramics and jades, Japanese ceramics, fans, samplers, illuminated manuscripts, armour. You can find here the masterpieces by Titian and Veronese, Rubens, Van Dyck, Gainsborough, Mone, Renoir, Picasso and the fine collection of the 20th century art.

In the **Folk Museum,** a vast array of domestic articles, trade equipment and other exhibits reflect local life over the past few hundred years. Extensive collections all over the world can be seen in the **University Museum of Archeology and Anthropology.**

To the North of this ancient city is the modern face of the University – **the Cambridge Science Park,** which has developed in response to the need for universities to increase their contact with high technology industry. It was established in 1970 by Trinity College, which has a long scientific tradition going back to Sir Isaak Newton. It's now home to more than sixty companies and research institutes which became the most successful of its kind in Europe. The ideas of 'science' and 'parks' may not seem to go together naturally, but the whole area is in fact very attractively designed, with a lot of space between each building. The planners thought that it was important for people to have a pleasant, park-like environment in which to work. But Cambridge is the victim of its own success: the old town is just not big enough to accommodate all the new activity; there is too much traffic and not enough housing. To solve the problems, there is now talk of creating a new town nearby, a sort of Cambridge number two out in the green fields.

Norfolk

East Anglia to the north-east of London is comparatively rural. Norfolk is a part of East Anglia. It's the only region in Britain where there are large expanses of uniformly flat land. This flatness, together with the comparatively dry climate, has made it the main area in the country for the growing of wheat and other arable crops. It's administrative centre is **Norwich** which is the main city of this county and the capital of East Anglia. It was once the greatest weaving town in Britain. In the 14th century it was famous throughout the country for its trade fair. But today the manufacture of wool is lost.

For almost 900 years Norwich has been and is a cathedral city, port and industrial centre. Norwich is a city in which the past and present exist side by side. The two most striking and imposing features of this attractive city are both inherited from the past: they are the Cathedral and the Castle, and both are of Norman design.

The **Cathedral** dates from 1099. The lofty Norman nave, bounded by its massive columns, is the chief glory of its interior. From the outside, an impressive view is obtained from the east end, where the graceful flying buttresses and tapering spire, rising to 315 feet, may be seen to the best advantage. Close to the west front is Norwich School, where **Horatio Nelson**¹ was a pupil.

Norwich Castle – stands on a huge mound in the centre of the city, and houses one of the finest museums to be found anywhere in Britain. The exhibits include many notable examples of the **Norwich School of Painting**. Norwich is rich in beautiful old houses and parish churches, many of which are built of chipped flints in the East Anglian manner. On the one side of the Market Place is the 15th century **Guildhall**² and on the other the superb church of St. Peter Mancroft. In the heart of the city is the Old Meeting House, built in 1693 when its members were able to return from religious exile in Holland.

The small but famous **Maddermarket Theatre** is constructed on the lines of an Elizabethan playhouse, and on its stage the Norwich Players have given many productions, including all the plays of Shakespeare.

Among the many other places of interest in Norwich which visitors should see are the remains of the ancient **City Walls**.

Norwich has a large shopping centre for the rural area surrounding it. Unlike many cities, where small specialist shops have gradually been replaced by large department stores and supermarkets, Norwich still has a wide variety of shops. One of the most unusual must be the Mustard Shop, and there are many different kinds as it is possible to imagine. It has a mustard museum, which describes the history of Colman's mustard. The Colmans were a famous Norwich family who started a mustard-making business over 150 years ago.

The Norfolk Broads³ (lakes) is a National Park, which is situated to the North and South of Norwich. There are many small lakes connected to each other by rivers and canals. Nearly 150 miles of waterways, popular with weekend sailors, fishermen and nature-lovers. It's a very popular area for people who go on holiday in boats.

Notes:

¹**Horatio Nelson** – was an English admiral who became famous for winning a number of sea battles against the French in the 1790s. These victories strengthened British military power at sea, and prevented Napoleon's forces attacking Britain.

²**Guildhall** – was the official building for merchants in the Middle Ages.

Yarmouth is located on the sandy east coast of the region. It is a well-known resort and receives about half a million visitors a year. As a fishing port Yarmouth has a long history which is chiefly connected with the fishing of the North Sea.

The Fen Country

The area known as **the Fens** covers part of three different counties: Lincolnshire, Cambridgeshire and Norfolk.

A fen is land which is low-lying and wet, often partly covered with water. The Fen Country consists of miles of flat land with almost no trees or hedges. It is divided by high banks that contain the rivers and drains, which help to control the level of water in the fields. The small fenland towns and villages used to be islands in the time before the area was drained.

A well-known English rebel, Oliver Cromwell, came from the Fens.

Now the area has some of the richest and most expensive farmland in the country. The black, fertile soil produces sugar-beet, potatoes, and celery, as well as cereals. A lot of fruit is grown in this area too. During the summer, when the fruit is picked, students come from different countries in Europe to work on the farms. In this way they can earn some money, have a holiday and improve their English all at the same time.

The area is, of course, much richer than it was in the days when men made their living from fishing and catching wildfowl, although mechanized farming has caused some social problems: there are fewer jobs, and the population is smaller because young people have moved to the larger towns and cities to look for work.

However, it is not short of visitors, particularly those who are interested in wildfowl (watching it, more than shooting it these days!).

An area known as the **Ouse Washes** is allowed to flood naturally and provides a perfect area for thousands of ducks, geese and swans which spend the winter there. Each year the swans fly from eastern Russia. Sometimes there are as many as 2,000 swans which arrive in family parties, having survived the dangerous journey.

Suffolk was once clothed by widespread forests, but now it's open farmland with little shelter from trees or hedges.

Suffolk has produced much violence, intrigue and rebellion. There is still much left that is worth seeing. The county town of Suffolk and its administrative centre **Ipswich** was inhabited in prehistoric times. King John gave the town its first political constitution in 1199. The town enjoyed a heyday in the 16th century when it was one of the most important wool ports.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- *encompasses* – включать в себя
- *to savour* – наслаждаться
- *commuter land* – территория для пассажиров пригородного сообщения
- *hop* – хмель

- *to excel (in)* – превосходить, выделяться

- *vineyard* – виноградник
- *to ensure* – обеспечить, гарантировать
- *oast-house* – хмелесушилка, печь для сушки хмеля
- *furnishings* – меблировка, обстановка
- *elegant* – изящный, изысканный, прекрасный
- *celebrating* – знаменитый, прославленный
- *amenities* – благоприятные условия для отдыха
- *superb* – великолепный, роскошный
- *essential treat* – истинное наслаждение
- *lane* – узкая улочка, переулок
- *rural* – сельский, деревенский
- *expanse* – широкое пространство
- *uniform land* – однообразная, однородная земля
- *farmstead* – усадьба
- *depopulation* – уменьшение населения
- *weaving* – ткацкое дело
- *lofty nave* – очень высокий неф (архитектурная часть церкви)
- *to obtain* – достигать, приобретать
- *flying buttress* – «летающая», развешивающаяся опора, подпора
- *tapering spire* – суживающийся, конусообразный шпиль (остроконечная верхушка)
- *front* – фасад
- *chipped flint* – обтёсанный кремнь
- *mustard* – горчица
- *fen* – болотистая местность
- *drain* – дренажная канава, водосток
- *rebel* – бунтовщик, мятежник
- *celery* – сельдерей
- *cereals* – хлебный злак
- *wildfowl* – дичь
- *to flood* – наводнять, орошать
- *heyday* – расцвет, лучшая пора

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Heathrow Gatwick, Kent, Sussex, Cambridgeshire, Norfolk, Canterbury, Dover, Ethelbert, Chichester, Lewes, Brighton, Hastings, Suffolk, Essex, William the Conqueror, East Anglia, Norwich, Ipswich, Colchester, Yarmouth, Peterborough, Maddermarket Theatre, Oliver Cromwell, Ouse Washes.

VOCABULARY EXERCISE

Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- *a large graceful bird that is usually white and has a long thin neck. It lives on or near water;*
 - *a piece of land next to or around your house where you can grow flowers, fruit, vegetables, etc., usually with an area of grass;*
 - *a small soft round fruit with shiny red or black skin and a stone inside;*
 - *birds that people hunt for sport or food, especially birds that live near water;*
 - *a long structure built in the sea and joined to the land at one end, often with places of entertainment on it;*
 - *a place where a lot of people go on holiday;*
 - *a round fruit with shiny red or green skin and firm white flesh;*
 - *a piece of land where grapes are grown in order to produce wine;*
 - *a piece of land, normally enclosed, in which fruit trees are grown;*
 - *a plant or part of a plant that is eaten as food;*
 - *the part of a plant that consists of a stone or seeds and flesh, can be eaten as food and usually tastes sweet;*
- (apple, cherry, vegetable, fruit, garden, vineyard, orchard, resort, pier, wildfowl, swan)***

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What are the main features of the South-East of England?
2. What are the main counties of the Southeast?
3. What is the nickname of Kent? Why?
4. What is the religious capital of England? What interesting places can be seen there?
5. What are the main towns of Sussex? Are they famous? Why?
6. What are the main features and counties of East Anglia? Is East Anglia agricultural or industrial area?
7. Why is Colchester considered to be one of the most important towns in English history?
8. What are the main interesting places for tourists in Cambridge?
9. Why was the Cambridge Science Park planned?
10. Why does Norfolk differ from the other counties of East Anglia?
11. What are the main towns of Norfolk?
12. What did you know about the area of the Fen Country?
13. What is the history of Suffolk?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

1. *Suggest English equivalents for the Russian parts. Read the whole sentence and translate it into Russian.*

1. Kent has (*выделяться*) fruit growing since the Romans first planted (*фруктовые сады и виноградники*) there.

2. It's an agricultural area, producing a lot of (*зерно, ячмень, пшеница, овёс, картофель, сахарная свекла*) are the most extensive (*урожаи*).

3. The Danes (*постоянно грабили население*) in the 9th and 10th centuries.

II. Test-translation

1.Пляж в Брайтоне. Сюда стоит приехать даже в плохую погоду. Самый известный и элегантный курорт Англии как всегда популярен. Британская аристократия облюбовала это место отдыха в середине 18 века. Сюда охотно приезжали и члены королевской семьи. Здесь бывала королева Виктория, но чаще других монархов отдыхал в Брайтоне Георг IV. Прославленный многочисленными любовными похождениями, монарх велел построить здесь дворец, в котором устраивал экстравагантные приёмы.

.....
.....

2. **Брайтон Пирс** – прогулочный пирс, построенный в 1899 году, выходит в море почти на полкилометра. Взору открываются стильные курорты и пляжи.

.....
.....

3. Меловое ущелье «**7 сестёр**» неподалёку от Eastborn - самый живописный уголок южного побережья Англии. Отвесная 170-метровая стена не раз становилась смертельной ловушкой для неосторожных путешественников.

.....
.....

III. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian.

Lesson 6

THE NORTH OF ENGLAND

THE NORTH-EAST

Durham, Northumberland, Yorkshire, Cleveland, Tyne and Wear, Humberside etc.

This northernmost region of England contains some of the wildest and loneliest parts in the country, but also some of the busiest industrial centres. The Ice Age formed many deep valleys in the counties of Cumbria and North Yorkshire, made rivers into waterfalls and left behind hills and mountains. Beneath the earth is coal – the foundation of the region's industry.

Northumbria

Northumbria is an area of northern Britain ruled by kings from the 7th to the 9th centuries AD. It was famous at that time for its monasteries. The name Northumbria is still sometimes used to mean north – east England and south – east Scotland, especially in books for tourists.

There are four counties in the region of Northumbria. They are **Tyne and Wear, Cleveland, Durham** and **Northumberland**. This is a region of great natural beauty although industry of some kind has existed here for thousands of years.

There has been a fishing industry in Northumbria probably since the middle of the 13th century. Wooden ships were built for fishing and for trading and this industry grew and grew, particularly during the 18th century. By 1850 the building of iron steamships became a major industry on the rivers Tyne, Wear and Tees. One hundred years ago a quarter of the world's ships were built in Northumbria. Today, sadly, this industry is disappearing. The world's first iron battleship was called '**Warrior**'. It is over 130 years old. Now it lies in Portsmouth harbor, where it is open to visitors.

About 200 years ago a period of great industrial growth began in Britain. This growth was fed by coal and steam power.

During the 19th century the Northeast of England led the world in many types of heavy industry. There were railway engineering, bridge building and industrial machinery. There was also an important textile industry. Both Yorkshire with its wool and Lancashire with its cotton were major textile-producing areas at this time.

Northumberland is situated on the Scottish border. It has a number of castles and Roman remains, including **Hadrian's Wall**.¹

Notes:

*¹**Hadrian's Wall** - is a wall in northern England built between 122 and 127 AD by the Roman emperor Hadrian. It was the northern border of the Roman Empire, from which the Romans could keep back the Picts (ancient British people). It was a major achievement (120 km. Long and 4.9 metres high) with forts (strong military buildings for defence) every mile along its length. Long sections of the wall still remain, and thousands of tourists visit it every year.*

The main city of the county is **Berwic – upon – Tweed**. This town at the mouth of the river Tweed, founded in about 870, was originally Scottish. During the extended frontier battles between the Scottish and the English it frequently saw fierce fighting. From 1147 – 82 it changed 13 times before being finally won by the English.

Durham is a county in north – east England that used to be a major centre of coal mining, shipbuilding and steel making. The county can be divided into two distinct parts. Eastwards to the coast is the most heavily populated part of the county. An almost continuous built-up area stretches along the coast from the river **Tees**¹ to the **Tyne**² estuary.

Durham is a city in the county of Durham and its administrative centre. It has a castle towering proudly over the banks of the river **Wear**, now a college of the University of Durham, and a beautiful Norman cathedral, one of the best examples of Romanesque architecture in Europe. The cathedral is a majestic sight which cannot fail to impress any lover of Britain's heritage.

Notes:

*¹**the Tees** – is a river in north – eastern England that flows from the Pennines through the Teesside region.*

*²**the Tyne** – is a river in north – eastern England which passes through Newcastle – upon – Tyne and reaches the North Sea.*

Cleveland

Cleveland means 'cliff-land', and cliffs predominated along the North Yorkshire coast and also inland, where the great scarp of the Cleveland Hills drops to the lowlands south of the Tees. The ancient rock has set the character of the region. The waters of the streams run red because of the richness of the iron ore mined locally.

Tyne and Wear

Tyne and Wear is a small metropolitan county in north-east England, formed in 1974 from parts of Durham and Northumberland. Much of the county is outlined with the symbols of the coal, iron and steel that made their region the centre of Britain's industrial greatness. The landscape is predominantly rural with the rows of miners' houses, green pasturelands, farms and villages. The coastline has stretches of beaches that are among the finest in the country.

Yorkshire

Yorkshire is a former county in north – east England. In 1974 it was divided into 2 new counties: **North Yorkshire** and **Humberside**, and 2 **metropolitan counties**¹: **West Yorkshire** and **South Yorkshire**.

Notes:

¹***metropolitan counties** – each of six new administrative areas of Britain created in 1974. These were formed from large city areas which were separated from the counties they were formerly in. Each one was divided into 10 districts and there were 2 systems of local government, county councils and district councils. In 1986 this system changed. County councils were abolished, leaving only district councils responsible for each district within the metropolitan counties.*

The main city of the county of **North Yorkshire** is the city of **York**. It's situated on the river **Ouse**. In 71 BC the Romans made the local settlement into a garrison town known as Eboracum, which became the capital of the Roman province of Britannia. It was the residence of many Roman emperors including Hadrian and Constantin the Great. Later it was the capital of the Saxon Kingdom of Northumbria and was converted to Christianity in the 7th c. In 867 it was conquered by the Danes who called it Jorvic, and it became the capital of the Viking kingdom. In 1069 York was conquered by the Normans.

York became one of the main cultural centers of the North and in medieval times, was the second city of the land. Victorian York was an important railway centre, and 20th century York is, among other things, the home of world-famous chocolate and one of the most beautiful cities in the world.

It's known especially for its ancient buildings including **York Minster**¹. It is the largest Gothic cathedral in Northern Europe and the most important church in the North of England.

There are many fascinating medieval streets, historical places. The city has many visitors and its attractions include **the National Railway Museum**² and **the Jorvic Viking Centre**, which has exhibitions about the period when people from Scandinavia invaded Britain.

Notes:

¹***York Minster** – is the cathedral in the city of York, one of the largest and best known in Britain. It was built during the 13th, 14th, 15th centuries and is famous for its beautiful stained glass windows.*

²***The National Railway Museum** is a museum which contains a large collection of old railway carriages and steam locomotives. The museum is a branch of the Science Museum in London and was opened in 1975.*

West Yorkshire is a county in the north of England, created in 1974 and consisting of 5 districts, which were previously part of the West. **Bradford** and **Leeds** are the largest cities of this county. Bradford grew into Britain's biggest wool market. Leeds became a world centre for ready – made clothing of all kinds.

South Yorkshire is the southern part of Yorkshire, where there are many industrial towns. Its administrative centre is **Sheffield**. It's the historical centre of the British steel industry. There has been an important iron industry there since the 12th century, and by the time of the Industrial Revolution the high quality of **Sheffield steel** was famous around the world. Many steel items are still produced in Sheffield, particularly cutlery (knives, forks, etc.) and special tools, but several local factories were closed down in the late 20th century, leaving many people unemployed.

Newcastle-upon-Tyne is the city at the heart of the North East. It's an industrial city and port on the river Tyne in north-east England. It used to be an important centre for coal-mining and shipbuilding, and many people became unemployed in the region when these industries became less active in the 1980s. It is now an important commercial, cultural and administrative centre. In 2001 **the Gateshead Millennium Bridge** was opened, which links Newcastle to the south bank of the river.

THE NORTH-WEST

Cumbria, Merseyside, Lancashire, Greater Manchester, Cheshire etc.

The Pennine mountains run up the middle of northern England like a spine. On either side, the large deposits of coal and iron ore enabled these areas to lead the Industrial Revolution in the 18th century. On the western side, the Manchester area, connected to the port of Liverpool by canal, became, in the 19th century, the world's leading producer of cotton goods; on the eastern side, towns such as Bradford and Leeds became the world's leading producers of woolen goods. Many other towns sprang up on both sides of the Pennines at this time, as a result of the growth of certain auxiliary industries and of coal mining. Further south, Sheffield became a centre for the production of steel goods. Further north, around Newcastle, shipbuilding was the major industry.

The decline in heavy industry in Europe in the second half of the twentieth century has hit the industrial north of England hard.

The towns on either side of the Pennines are flanked by steep slopes on which it is difficult to build and are surrounded by land most of which is unsuitable for any agriculture other than sheep farming. Therefore, the pattern of settlement in the north of England is often different from that in the south. Open and uninhabited countryside is never far away from its cities and towns.

Further away from the main industrial areas, the north of England is sparsely populated.

In the north-western corner of the country is **Cumbria**, on the border with Scotland. It consists of the former counties of Cumberland and Westmorland and part of Lancashire. The county of Cumbria is the place where one of the most beautiful spots of England, **Lake District**, is situated. It is the central mountainous area of Cumbria. It contains the highest mountain in England – **Scafell Pike** (3210 feet / 978 metres high).

There are many beautiful lakes there which give it its name. It's variously termed **the Lake Country, Lakeland, the Lakes.**

The largest lakes are **Windermere, Coniston water, Derwent water and Ullswater.** There are numerous swift and clear streams and small water-falls. The whole region is well-known for its great natural beauty. The area is associated with the Lake Poets who lived there and wrote about it. Its best known members were William Wordsworth who was born and lived there for most of his life, Samuel Taylor Coleridge and so on. It was later the home of the writers: **John Ruskin¹** and **Beatrix Potter²**. The district of 16 lakes is a sad region under a canopy of rain but when the sun descends upon that vast natural reserve, and the surfaces of the lakes smile, it is a place to remember.

Much of the land is high and thinly peopled. These high parts are used as pasture for sheep.

The beautiful scenery of the Lake District is very popular with tourists and it was made a national park in 1951. Its large areas belong to the **National Trust³**.

The Lake District is a vast natural park, one of the most impressive to be found in Europe. It offers a splendid playground for ramblers who travel with their own tents, and thrills for the experienced rock climber; a happy hunting ground for anglers; a peaceful reserve for yachtsmen.

Since the Lake District is a National Park, there is special control over building, to make sure that the beauty of the countryside is not spoiled.

Notes:

¹**J. Ruskin** – (1819–1900) is an English writer and artist. In 1869 he became the first Professor of Art at Oxford University. Ruskin College in Oxford is named after him. His house in the Lake District is kept as a museum.

²**Beatrix Potter** – (1866–1943) is an English writer of children's books about the adventures of animals, including "Peter Rabbit", "Benjamin Bunny" and so on.

³**National Trust³** - is a charity, which means it is financed by ordinary people who pay to become members. It is not financed or run by the government. The Trust was set up in 1895 by three people who thought that industrialization could spoil the countryside and ancient buildings of England and Wales. Today the Trust is the third largest landowner in the country.

Mersyside

Mersyside is a metropolitan county in north-west England that includes **Liverpool.** Liverpool is a city waiting for a change of image. Its former prosperity was built on the docks and international trade: initially, that was the triangular trade of slaves to America, sugar and cotton to England, and manufactured goods to Africa. Later, it was the leading British port for goods and people to and from America, but fell victim to the change in direction of British trade: ports facing Europe, like Dover and Felixstow, expanded, and Liverpool lost business. The city has never fully recovered. Liverpool receives regional funds from the EU as one of the poorest parts of Europe. But all the evidence of past glory is there: **St George's Hall**, one of the finest neo-classical buildings in England; **the Anglican Cathedral** is one of the largest churches in Christendom.

Liverpool is not only an important trading centre, university town and financial centre. The major employers are the motor companies **Ford** and **General Motors**, **Pilkington Glass**, **Shell** and so on. In 1984 it became a free port.

The city has many handsome historic administrative and commercial buildings, many gardens and parks and numerous museums, including the famous **Walker Art Gallery**¹ and **the Philharmonic Hall**, one of the best Concert Halls in Europe. Among the other museums we can mention **Museum of Labour History**, **Boat Museum**.

Notes:

¹***Walker Art Gallery** – is Liverpool's best known museum. It has a rich collection of works by Italian, Flemish and French masters from the 14th century to the present, including works by Rubens, Rembrandt, French impressionists.*

There is something very powerful and attractive about the culture of the city. Liverpool is famed for its enlightened patronage for the arts. Liverpool's poets, artists, writers, actors, comedians, musicians, sports stars and entertainers have made a lasting mark of the cultural life of the nation, particularly since the emergence of the Liverpool-born **Beatles** to international fame in the world. The British media would be lost without Liverpool's contribution.

The city is famous for its sport, too. One of the biggest football stadiums in Britain is in Liverpool.

Greater Manchester

Greater Manchester is a metropolitan county in north-west England consisting of Manchester and parts of the towns and counties that surround it.

Manchester is a large city in the county, which was founded by the Romans. It first became important as an industrial city during the 18th century, producing wool and cotton goods for sale in Britain and abroad. Today Manchester is the home for not just one kind of industry but for 101 and is the biggest commercial and service centre outside London.

Manchester makes all kinds of machine tools and machinery; electrical equipment; electronic computers; textiles; foodstuffs; rubber products; aircraft; chemicals; wire cables; metal goods; clothing; boilers; cranes; bricks; soaps; plastics; iron and steel. Manchester has always had a strong tradition of education. It had a free grammar school in the time of Henry VII. The University of Manchester is the biggest in Europe, and students are an important part of the city's life. One result of this is that there is a big club and dance scene, and a lot of rock musicians have started life in Manchester. Since the 1980s Manchester has also had a reputation for its pop groups.

Students are also important customers for the many hundreds of restaurants in the city – mostly Indian and Chinese. There is the biggest **Chinatown** in Europe, with dozens of restaurants and Chinese

supermarkets. There is a Chinese food factory which makes noodles, and every year the city has a Dragon-Boat Festival on the Manchester Ship Canal. There is also a lively area of pubs, cafes and clubs known as Gay Village.

The city is an important cultural and intellectual centre with a tradition of left-wing politics. Its famous buildings include **the Victorian Town Hall** and **the Bridgewater International Concert Hall**.

There are many museums in Manchester but **the Museum of Science and Industry** is Europe's largest museum.

Notes:

Manchester did these first:

- *First free public library in Europe – Chetham's Library, 1653*
- *First Cotton Mill in Britain with a steam engine - 1783*
- *First artificial splitting of the atom, Manchester University Labs - 1918*
- *First railway and station passenger traffic by steam locomotives, Liverpool – Manchester, 1830*
- *First Rolls-Royce car - 1903*
- *First airmen to cross the Atlantic - 1919*
- *First ship canal - 1894*
- *First municipal airport in Britain - 1929*
- *First large steerable radio telescope in the world - 1957*
- *First 400 feet (122 metres) building in Britain – the Cooperative Insurance Society Building, 1961*

Cheshire

Countryside like a vast park rolls across the County of Cheshire. The river Dee runs gently through this rich farmland past the ancient city of **Chester** and out to the Irish Sea across a huge sandy estuary. Chester has both Roman and Anglo-Saxon ramparts and walls and has the best-preserved old town in the whole Great Britain.

Lancashire

Lancashire was one of the centres of the Industrial Revolution, and was famous especially for its cotton mills and coal mines. In 1974 the county was reduced in size and it no longer includes the cities of Liverpool and Manchester.

Today the county of Lancashire is the most popular resort area in the North of England. It draws visitors from all corners of the country. The prosperity of these resorts depends on their holiday trade, and they have poured millions of pounds into developing entertainment facilities. The county town is **Lancaster**. John of Gaunt became Duke of Lancaster in 1362, and since 1399 the Duchy of Lancaster has been a possession of the British Crown. The Lancastrians in the Wars of the Roses were supporters of the Royal House descended from John of Gaunt.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- heritage – наследие
- scarp – крутой откос
- iron ore – железная руда
- to outline – обрисовать, сделать набросок
- rural – сельский, деревенский
- garrison – гарнизон
- cutlery – ножевые изделия
- spine – хребет
- deposit – вклад; месторождение
- to flank – быть расположенным; граничить; примыкать
- sparsely populated – малонаселённый
- canopy – навес, полог
- rambler – праздношатающийся; турист
- to thrill – трепетать, сильно волновать
- angler – рыболов
- to enlighten patronage – осведомлять о покровительстве
- roll – тропинка
- rampart – крепостной вал, оплот

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Cumbria, North Yorkshire, Northumbria, Durham, Tyne and Wear, Cleveland, Tees, Lancashire, Romanesque architecture, Ouse, Viking, Bradford, Leeds, Sheffield, Gateshead Millennium Bridge, the Pennine, Manchester, Liverpool, Scaffel Pike, Windermere, William Wordsworth, John Ruskin, Beatrix Potter, Cheshire, Chester.

VOCABULARY EXERCISE

Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- connected with or like a countryside;
 - a strong hard metal that is made of a mixture of iron and carbon;
 - any type of fabric made by weaving or knitting;
 - any vehicle that can fly and carry goods or passengers;
 - a very steep slope;
 - any substance that is used as food;
 - a person who walks in the countryside for pleasure, especially as part of an organized group; -
 - a strong hard metal that is used to make steel and is also found in small quantities in blood and food;
- (steel, iron, textiles, foodstuffs, aircraft, rambler, scarp, rural)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What is the main characteristic of the northernmost region of England? What are the main north-east counties?
2. What are the main features and sights of Northumbria?
3. What are the main features and sights of Durham?
4. What is the main character of Cleveland?
5. What made Tyne and Wear the centre of Britain's industrial greatness?
6. What are the main features of Yorkshire? Why did York become one of the main cultural centres of the North? What is the history of York?
7. What are the main features and towns of West Yorkshire and South Yorkshire?
8. What city is situated at the heart of the North East of England?
9. What is the main characteristic of the north-west of England? What are the main counties of this region?
10. What are the main features of Cumbria? What is the most famous and beautiful place in this county?
11. What is the history of Liverpool? What are the main interesting places to see in Liverpool today?
12. Why is Liverpool attractive for people of arts? What is the contribution of Liverpool in the cultural life of England?
13. What is the history of Manchester? Why is Manchester considered to be an important cultural and intellectual centre?
14. What places are interesting to see in Manchester?
15. What are the main features of Cheshire?
16. Why is the county of Lancashire the most popular resort area in the north of England?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Suggest English equivalents for the Russian parts. Read the whole sentence and translate it into Russian.

1. Durham is a county in north – east England that used to be a major centre of (*добыча угля, кораблестроение и производство стали*).
2. (*По обеим сторонам*) the large (*запасы угля и железной руды*) enabled these areas to lead the Industrial Revolution in the 18th century.
3. (*Подавшие*) from the main industrial areas, the north of England is (*малонаселенный*).
4. The Lake District offers a splendid playground for (*путешественники*) who travel with their own tents, and thrills for (*опытные альпинисты*); a happy hunting ground for (*рыболовы*); a peaceful reserve for (*яхтсмены*).
5. Manchester makes all kinds of (*станки и машинное оборудование, электрическое оборудование, электронная вычислительная машины, текстиль, продукты питания, резиновые изделия, самолёты, химические препараты, провололочные*).

изделия, изделия из металла, одежда, паровые котлы, грузоподъёмные краны, кирпич, мыло, изделия из пластика, железо и сталь.

6. *Chester has both Roman and Anglo-Saxon (крепостные валы и стены) and has (лучшие всех сохранившийся) old town in the whole Great Britain.*

II. Test-translation

1. Покрытые лесом холмы и долины с живописными водоёмами – это Озёрный Край. Куда ни кинь взгляд – леса, холмы и, конечно же, вода. Полтора десятка крупных озёр ледникового происхождения и десятки меньших по размеру водоёмов привлекают в Национальные парки Великобритании около 15 миллионов туристов в год.

2. ‘BBC place’ – так местные жители называют этот уголок. Старинная пушка на озере Виндермер является излюбленным фоном для репортажей Государственного Британского телевидения.

3. Виндермер – самое большое озеро Англии. Его протяжённость – 17 км. Этот регион не утратил своего идиллического великолепия, чему во многом способствует архитектура городка Ambleside, на северном берегу озера Виндермер.

III. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian.

Lesson 7

CENTRAL ENGLAND

The Midlands

The county of Midlands is one of England’s most productive regions consisting of **the West Midlands** and **the East Midlands**. The Midlands represent the largest concentration of manufacturing industry.

The West Midlands

The West Midlands is a metropolitan county in Central England, created in 1974 and consisting of seven districts, including the cities of **Birmingham** and **Coventry**.

Birmingham is the main city of the county. It’s the second city in Britain after London. It has a population of just over one million. A very important part of Birmingham’s identity is the large immigrant population. Birmingham is multiracial city and it also has a high student population since there are two universities in the area.

It’s a big industrial centre, producing jewellery, metal and most important of all, cars. Although it has no outlet on the seacoast and doesn’t stand on any great river, it has become a busy hive of industry.

Birmingham grew quickly after the Industrial Revolution in the 18th century because it was in the centre of Britain with good communications and large local supplies of coal and water. In the 20th century it expanded even more and now it's a major European city with excellent facilities. For example, in the modern city there is a huge shopping centre called the **Bull Ring**. This centre is completely traffic free and linked by subways with the major shopping streets of the city. Years ago farmers used to sell their animals at the Bull Ring, but now it's one of the biggest open-air markets and shopping centres in the United Kingdom. People enjoy shopping there because it has modern shops, together with atmosphere of a traditional street market.

In Birmingham there are all amenities you would expect: excellent shopping, the Museum and Art Gallery, two cathedrals and several interesting churches, large numbers of cafes, restaurants and pubs. **Cadbury World**¹ is a permanent exhibition devoted entirely to chocolate.

Birmingham has more canals than Venice. Some canal basins have been developed as recreational centres with walks, pubs, restored buildings and boat trips.

The city has excellent facilities for all kinds of sport. There are twenty swimming pools and eight municipal golf courses, as well as many private clubs.

The district around Birmingham is known as **the Black Country**. It is a land of factories and mines. Steam engines, gas engines, motor-cars, railway carriages, rails, guns, bicycles, agricultural implements, cooking utensils, carpenter's tools, screws and nails are among the articles manufactured in the factories of the Black Country.

The second largest city of the county is **Coventry**. The name of Coventry may have been derived from a great tree known in Anglo-Saxon days as 'Cofa's Tree'.

Notes:

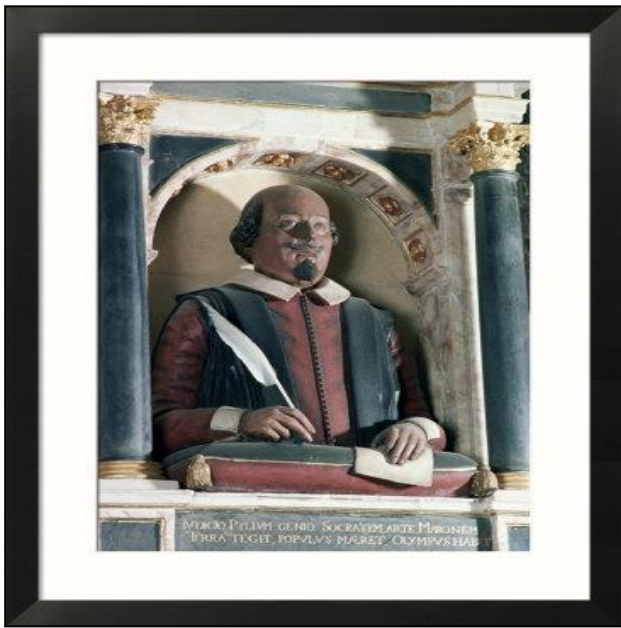
¹**Cadbury World**- is a large British food and drinks company. It was formed in 1969 when Cadbury's, Britain's leading chocolate producer, combined with Schweppes, which makes soft drinks (no alcohol) such as tonic water and lemonade.

Coventry developed into a fine city. From the manufacture of broadcloth in the 14th century to engineering of the 20th century the name of Coventry and its products are known all over the world. Coventry is both an ancient city with a long history and a 20th century city looking to the future.

There is plenty to see in Coventry. First and foremost are the cathedrals. Many of the buildings were destroyed by bombs in World War II, including its cathedrals. A new cathedral was built next to the ruins of the old one after the war.

Warwickshire

Warwickshire is a county in Central England, with the town of Warwick as its administrative



centre. It lies south of Birmingham. It's a fascinating region with its variety of attractions. This ancient town is on the river Avon. It contains **Warwick castle**, a very popular tourist attraction, the earliest parts of which were built in the 14th century. Warwick Castle is the finest medieval castle in England. This castle is among the few medieval fortresses in England still lived in today. Its exterior with its fortifications which have survived is a splendid example of a 14th-century fortress and its interior reflects the 17th and 18th centuries lifestyle. The castle which stands on a hill above the Avon, was probably begun in 915. William the

Conqueror ordered to enlarge it. The castle was never captured, but a fire destroyed large sections of the living apartments. Today it harbours an interesting collection of weapons, including a helmet belonging to Cromwell. The principal rooms contain some fine paintings, including works by Rubens, van Dyck, Holbein. The famous Warwick vase – nearly 7 feet tall, by a Roman artist from the reign of the Emperor Hadrian – used to be on display in a house in the park. The splendidly appointed State Rooms, including the Great Hall, contain fine collections of pictures and furniture.

Stratford-upon-Avon is the town in Warwickshire where the greatest dramatist and poet of the English literature William Shakespeare was born and died.

Stratford is a very interesting town in the centre of England, so Shakespeare was born right in the heart of England. There are beautiful woods, green fields, a quiet gentle river – the Avon – and lovely houses, black and white with thatched roofs.

Stratford is quite a busy town, especially on market day when the farmers from the countryside round Stratford come to buy or sell cows, pigs or sheep.

Stratford has a greater concentration of historic buildings than any other English town. Among these is **Holy Trinity Church**, where the Shakespeare family are buried. There is a bust of Shakespeare that was carved by a Dutch sculptor who must have seen Shakespeare, and on the stone of Shakespeare's grave are the lines written by Shakespeare himself. There is **Harvard House**, the home of Katherine Rogers, mother of John Harvard, founder of the famous American University; the **Old Grammar School** where Shakespeare was a pupil. There is a room with a little wooden desk, the very desk that Shakespeare sat in when he went to school. The red brick **Shakespeare Memorial Theatre** is also in Stratford. Shakespeare's plays are performed for eight months each year and thousands of people from all parts of

the world come to see them. There is a house in Henly Street preserved as his birthplace. There is the very room where Shakespeare was born. Lots of people who had visited the house had written their names on the walls. It seems a wrong thing to do – although among the names are Walter Scott, Dickens and Thackeray.

There are many interesting and unusual museums in Stratford-upon-Avon. **Butterfly Farm** is a landscaped jungle environment with ponds, streams and waterfalls, thickly planted with dozens of varieties of tropical flowers which provide nectar for up to 1000 exotic butterflies from all over the world. **The Insect City** is devoted to spiders and insects which are best kept behind glass in landscaped cages closely resembling their natural habitats. One of the attractions of the town is the **Teddy Bear Museum**. In a beautiful Elizabethan house hundreds of bears from around the world – famous bears, bears of the famous, all displayed in theatrical settings.

All these attractions make Stratford and Shakespeare's Country not only a place to visit, but also a place to stay and explore.

Staffordshire

Staffordshire is a county in western central England. It consists mainly of agricultural land. Its administrative centre is the town of **Stafford**. The county of Staffordshire is known all over the world for its potteries. During the last 300 years, the craftsmen have made English pottery at its best. Fragments of pottery discovered in the area dates back to Neolithic times, and excavation have uncovered later Roman and Saxon wares.

Herefordshire and Worcestershire

Herefordshire is famous for its cider and natural beauty of the valleys. Hereford is the city near the border with Wales. Its cathedral contains a very old map of the world. The administrative centre of Worcestershire is Worcester. It was an Anglo-Saxon town and has a famous cathedral, which was mostly built in the 14th century. The city is known as the place where Royal Worcester porcelain is produced and it is also one of the cities where the Three Choirs Festival is held.

The East Midlands

Nottinghamshire

Nottinghamshire is a county which lies in the heart of England's East Midlands. It's famous (especially in the past) as a centre of the coal-mining industry. Its administrative centre is **Nottingham** – the capital of the shire. This capital is very ancient. Its castle was founded by William the Conqueror in 1068. It has a fine Roman Catholic cathedral and two universities. On the other hand, it's a very modern city of some 300,000 people with a range of shops, several fine hotels, an Art Gallery, lovely parks and a

multitude of other attractions and amenities. These include two modern theatres, **the Nottingham Playhouse**, which since its opening in the mid-1960s has won a national reputation as one of the leading repertory theatres in Britain; and the **Nottingham Theatre Royal**, more than a century old and recently completely refurbished.

Nottingham is known throughout the world both for its historical associations and for its industries. Situated in the heart of England, it's surrounded by countryside famous in English history, in which many of the stately homes of England can be seen.

Although the great **Sherwood Forest**¹ has practically disappeared, parts of it still exist, and near the village of Edwinstowe is the **Major Oak**, a tree of immense girth and age, which **Robin Hood**² and his Merry Men made their headquarters. Nearby is another ancient tree known as the **Shambles Oak** or **Robin Hood's Larder**. A state of Robin Hood now stands in Robin Hood's Green at the foot of Nottingham Castle.

The Castle now houses a **Museum of Fine and Applied Arts** and contains paintings by many famous artists. Early Nottingham laces, pottery and alabaster carvings are also among the exhibits.

On the western boundary of the city is **Wollaton Hall**, one of the finest examples of Elizabethan architecture. Now a Natural History Museum, it's surrounded by beautiful gardens and a deer park; close by is **University Park** with a boating lake, open-air swimming pool and the University.

South of the city is the river Trent with its wide embankment, floral gardens, boating and fishing. Across **Trent Bridge** is the famous **Cricket Ground**, scene of many matches and known to sportsmen everywhere. To the north of the city is **Newstead Abbey**, home of the poet **Lord Byron**. The Abbey contains many interesting pictures and relics associated with its monastic history and the Byron family.

The city itself, with the magnificent Council House in the centre, has abundant facilities for entertainment and sport.

Notes:

¹**Sherwood Forest** – is a forest in the English Midlands, famous in old stories as the place where Robin Hood's Merry Men lived and fought against the forces of the **Sheriff of Nottingham**. It used to be a very large forest, but only a small part of it still remains. The Sheriff of Nottingham was the main enemy of Robin Hood. He was a cruel and dishonest government official responsible for the town Nottingham and the area around it.

²**Robin Hood** – is a character in traditional British stories, who is said to have lived in Sherwood Forest during the rule of King Richard I in 1189 – 1199. Together with his companions (usually called his Merry Men) they robbed rich people and gave money to poor people. There is no evidence that R.Hood ever existed but there are many stories about him and many films have been made about his adventures. In these he is often shown wearing clothes made of a material called **Lincoln green**, and holding a bow.

Nottingham is essentially an industrial city. It was famous for its dyed cloths, ales, tanneries and alabaster carving. Industrial Nottingham owes much to the foundation of the hosiery and lace industries.

Today its lace and hosiery are world-famous, and laces for the creations of the couturiers of London and Paris, delicate lingerie laces, lace furnishing for windows and tableware are in great demand.

Textiles, lace, hosiery, engineering, bicycles, tobacco, pharmaceuticals, chemicals, telecommunications, brewing, shoes, and furniture are also extremely important products from a county which is “home” to worldwide household names such as **Boots**¹, **Raleigh**², **Plessey**³.

Notes:

¹**Boots** – *is a company with shops in almost every town in Britain. The shops sell medicines and many other items for personal use, as well as some food.*

²**Raleigh** – *is a British bicycle company, established in Nottingham in 1890.*

³**Plessey** – *is a big company which produces radio electronic equipment, established in 1925.*

Derbyshire

Not far from Nottingham is **Derby**, the main city of the county of Derbyshire. It's an ancient town; the Romans had a camp there, but it was influenced mostly by the Danes, and its name comes from the Danish 'deoraby', meaning 'the place of the deer'. Today it's a busy prosperous industrial centre famous for its railway works, Rolls-Royce factories and Crown Derby porcelain.

Leicestershire

Some of the richest grazing land in England lies in the county of Leicestershire. Its administrative centre is Glenfield. The land is rich in history. **Leicester**, the county town, was one of the largest towns in Roman Britain and parts of the Roman city walls remain, as well as a ruined medieval castle.

Leicester became a centre of the wool made in the 15th century and is today an important industrial city. The National Space Science Centre opened there in 2001.

Northamptonshire

The scenery of the county of Northamptonshire is pleasant rather than spectacular. It's administrative centre is **Northampton**. The town has a long history of making shoes and there are still shoe factories there today. Northampton is famous for its **Museum of Leathercraft** which is devoted to the history of leather. There are exhibits, some dating from 3 500 years ago, from Ancient Egypt, North America and Indonesia as well as from Great Britain and special displays on a number of themes, including saddler and harness and glove-making.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- *hive* – улей, муравейник
- *recreational centres* - развлекательный центр
- *agricultural implements* – сельскохозяйственные инструменты

- cooking utensils - кухонная посуда
- screw – шуруп, гайка
- nails – гвозди
- spider - паук
- insect - насекомое
- natural habitat – естественная среда обитания
- pottery – гончарные изделия, керамика
- porcelain - фарфор
- amenities – благоприятные условия для отдыха
- repertory - репертуар
- to refurbish – полировать; подновлять
- girth – размер дерева в обхвате
- larder - кладовая
- tannery – кожевенный завод
- alabaster carving – гипсовая резьба
- hosiery – чулочные изделия, трикотаж
- lace industry – производство кружев
- couturier – кутюрье, дамский портной
- lingerie laces – кружева для дамского белья
- tableware – посуда, вилки, ложки и.т.д.
- leather - кожа
- saddler – седельный мастер
- harness – упряжь, сбруя

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: Birmingham, Coventry, Venice, Warwickshire, Rubens, van Dyck, Holbein, Walter Scott, Dickens, Thackeray, Herefordshire, Worcestershire, Nottinghamshire, Wollaton Hall, Raleigh, Plessey, Derbyshire, Leicestershire, Northamptonshire.

VOCABULARY EXERCISE

Choose the word corresponding to the definition from those listed below:

- a hard white shiny substance made by baking clay and used for making delicate cups, plates and ornaments;
- the house or area where a person was born;
- a structure made for bees to live in;
- pots, dishes, etc. made with clay that is baked in an oven, especially when they are made by hand;
- a large tree that produces small nuts often eaten by animals;
- a delicate fabric made from threads of cotton, silk, etc. that are woven into a pattern of holes;
- a thin pointed piece of metal like a nail with a raised spiral line along it and a line or cross cut into its head;
- the type of work of a theatre company in which different plays are performed for short periods of time;
- any small creature with six legs and a body divided into three parts;
- material made by removing the hair or fur from animal skins and preserving the skins using special processes;

(hive, screw, insect, pottery, porcelain, repertory, lace, leather, oak, birthplace)

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What are the main features of the county of Midlands? What are the main cities of this region?
2. What is the history of Birmingham? How was it growing?
3. How can you characterize the Black Country?
4. Why is Coventry considered to be both an ancient and modern city?
5. What are the main characteristics of Warwickshire? What are the most popular historical and cultural places in this county?
6. What famous places in Stratford-upon-Avon are worth visiting and exploring?
7. What unusual museums are there in Stratford?
8. Why is the county of Staffordshire known all over the world?
9. Why are the counties of Herefordshire and Worcestershire known all over the world?
10. What are the main counties of the East Midlands?
11. What are the main features of Nottingham? What historical places can be seen there?
12. Is Nottingham an industrial city?
13. What is the history and culture of Derbyshire?
14. What is the history and culture of Leicestershire?
15. What is the history and culture of Northamptonshire?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Suggest English equivalents for the Russian parts. Read the whole sentence and translate it into Russian.

1. (Паровые и газовые двигатели, легковые автомобили, железнодорожные вагоны, рельсы, огнестрельное оружие, велосипеды, сельскохозяйственные принадлежности, кухонная посуда, инструменты для плотника, шурупы и гвозди are among the articles manufactured in the factories of the Black Country.
2. Butterfly Farm is a landscaped jungle environment with (пруды, ручьи и водопады, густо засаженные дюжиной видов тропических цветов) which provide (нектар) for up to 1000 exotic (бабочки) from all over the world.
3. There are exhibits, some dating from 3 500 years ago, from (Древний Египет, Северная Америка и Индонезия) as well as from Great Britain and special displays on a number of themes, including (производство сёдел, упряжи и перчаток).
4. Early Nottingham (кружева, керамика и гипсовая резьба) are also among (экспонатов).
5. (Текстильные изделия, кружева, чулочные изделия, техника, велосипеды, табак, фармацевтика, химические препараты, телесвязь, пивоварение, обувь и мебель) are also extremely important products from a county

II. Test-translation

1. Iron Bridge – первый в мире чугунный мост. Построил его в 1779 году инженер Авраам Дерби III. Благодаря выплавке чугуна регион West Midlands стал колыбелью промышленной революции, которая изменила сначала Англию, а затем и весь мир.

.....

.....

2. Вокруг Iron Bridge открыто много музеев под открытым небом, посвящённых Викторианской Англии.

.....

.....

3. В 1800 году около 70% жителей Англии работало в сельском хозяйстве. 100 лет спустя земледельцы составляли лишь 10% населения. Англия была тогда самой богатой и самой индустриально развитой страной в мире.

.....

.....

III. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian.

UNIT II

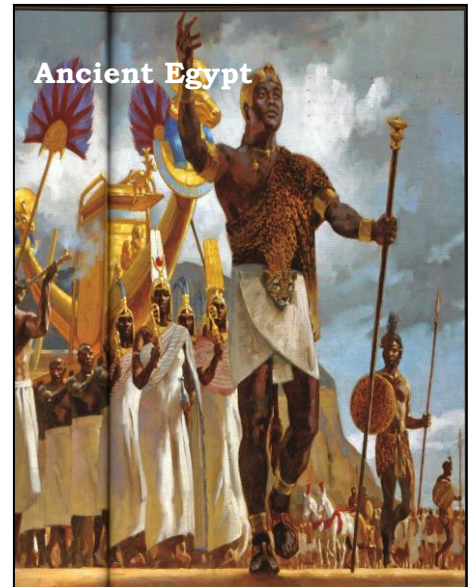
THE SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT IN GREAT BRITAIN

Lesson 1

Monarchy as a system of Government

Coronation Ceremony and Royal Regalia

Monarchy is a system of government by a king or a queen; it's a country that is ruled by a king or a queen. Monarchy is a form of government in which sovereignty is vested in a single person whose right to rule is generally hereditary and who is empowered to remain in office for life. The power of this sovereign may vary from **the absolute** to that strongly limited by custom or **constitution**. Monarchy has existed since the earliest history of humankind and was often established during periods of external threat or internal crisis because it provided a more efficient focus of power than aristocracy or democracy, which tended to refuse power. Most monarchies appear to have been elective originally, but dynasties early became customary. In primitive times divine descent of the monarch was often claimed.



Deification was general in ancient Egypt, the Middle East, and Asia, and it was practiced during certain periods in ancient Greece and Rome. A more moderate belief arose in Christian Europe in the Middle Ages; it stated that the monarch was the appointed agent of divine will. This was symbolized by the coronation of the king by a bishop or the Pope, as in the Holy Roman Empire. The medieval monarchs were in fact weak and dependent upon the nobility for much of their power. During the Renaissance and after, there emerged “new monarchs” who broke the power of the nobility and centralized the state under their own rigid rule. Notable examples are Henry VII and Henry VIII of England and

Louis XIV of France.

The 16th and 17th century mark the height of absolute monarchy, which found its theoretical justification in the doctrine of divine right. However, even the powerful monarchs of the 17th century were somewhat limited by custom and constitution as well as by the delegation of powers to strong bureaucracies. **The Glorious Revolution in England**¹ (1688) and **the French Revolution** (1789) were important landmarks in the decline and limitation of monarchical power. The monarch, however, remained the centre of executive power throughout most of the 18th century.

Notes

¹*the Glorious Revolution in England (1688) – the events in Britain in 1688 when the Roman Catholic James II was removed as king and replaced by his daughter Mary and her husband William III (William of Orange). So many of James's Protestant officers joined William's side that there was no fighting, and James escaped to France with his family. These events are also called **The Glorious Revolution** because constitutional monarchy was introduced at the same time.*

By the end of the 19th century Royal power was increasingly reduced by constitutional provisions and parliamentary incursions.

In the 20th century monarchs have generally become symbols of national unity, while real power has been transferred to constitutional assemblies. Over the past 200 years democratic self-government has been established and extended to such an extent that a true functioning monarchy is a rare occurrence in both East and West. Notable constitutional monarchies include Belgium, Denmark, Great Britain, Japan, the Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Thailand.

Constitutional monarchy is a system of government in which a monarch has agreed to share power with a constitutionally organized government. The monarch may remain the de facto head of state or may be a purely ceremonial head.

The British Constitutional Monarchy was the consequence of the Glorious Revolution of 1688, and was enshrined in the Bill of Rights of 1689.

A monarch is trained from birth for the position of Head of State. The people know who will succeed, and this certainly gives a nation invaluable continuity and stability. This also explains why it is rare for an unsuitable person to become King. There are no expensive elections as in the US where they have to elect “a new Royal Family” every four years. In the French system the President may be a member of one party, while the Prime Minister is from another, which only leads to confused government. In a British Monarchy there is no such confusion, for the monarch doesn't rule in conflict with government but reigns over the whole nation.



A monarch and members of a Royal Family can become involved in a wide range of issues which are forbidden to politicians. All parties have vested interests which they cannot ignore. “A politician must inevitably be a spokesperson for only part of the nation, not the whole. A politician’s motives will always be suspected. Members of the Royal Family, by contrast, because of their symbolic position, are able to speak to a much wider constituency.”

All nations are made up of families, and it’s natural that a family should be at a nation’s head. It’s interesting to note that even today **the Monarch** is able to play a role in the spiritual life of a nation which presidents seem unable to fulfill.

The Value of the Monarchy



The monarchy hasn’t always been popular but it survived the republican sentiments, because the monarchy gives British people a symbol of continuity and a harmless outlet for the expression of national pride. Public have been encouraged to look up to the Royal family as a model of Christian family life.

For several centuries the monarch personally had had the supreme executive, legislative and judicial power, but with the growth of Parliament and the courts the direct exercise of these functions progressively decreased. Many people change their attitude to the monarchy. There are many anti-royalist opinions. The King has recently been reported to be the richest man in the world. People think he must pay taxes on his private income. But some Conservative MPs (strong supporters of the monarchy) protested at how much the Royal family was costing the country. But **Civil list** payments (Civil list is the money which the King and some of his relatives get from parliament each year for public duties.) to some members of the Royal family were stopped.

The Role of the Monarchy

Until the end of the 17th century, British monarchs were executive monarchs – that is, they had the right to make and pass legislation. Since the beginning of the 18th century, the monarch has become a constitutional monarch, which means that he or she is bound by rules and conventions and remains politically impartial.

On almost all matters he or she acts on the advice of ministers. While acting constitutionally, the Sovereign retains an important political role as Head of State, formally appointing prime ministers, approving certain legislation and bestowing honours.

The King also has important roles to play in other organizations, including the Armed Forces and the Church of England. The King acts as a focus for national unity, presiding at ceremonial occasions and representing Britain around the world.

The monarch is the personal embodiment of the government of the country. Clear separation between the symbol of government (the King) and the actual government (the ministers) doesn't threaten the stability of the country as a whole. Other countries without a monarch have to use something else as the symbol of the country. In the USA, for example, one of these is its flag, and to damage the flag in any way is actually a criminal offence.

The monarch has a very practical role to play. By being a figurehead and representing the country, King Charles III can perform the ceremonial duties which heads of state often have to spend their time on. This way the real government has more time to get on with the actual job of running the country.

Coronation ceremony and Royal regalia



The Coronation is the ceremony that takes place at Westminster Abbey when a new British king or queen is crowned. After a religious ceremony, they are given the crown and other items that represent power and wealth, and become officially king or queen. The Coronation is always marked by a public holiday and celebrations all over the country. Since the coronation of Queen Victoria **coronation mugs** have been made as souvenirs and some people like to collect them. Edward VIII coronation mugs are very rare because the coronation didn't take place.

Regalia is the name given to the emblems of visible marks of royalty, which from Biblical times, have been used during the religious ceremonies marking the accessions of kings and emperors to their high position of state. Such religious ceremonies have fallen into disuse in many of the countries where they were formerly practiced; but in the United Kingdom they still take place, and during the last coronation ceremony King Charles III was invested with regalia as his ancestors had been invested from the days of the Norman conquest and before.

Almost the whole of the present regalia was made for the coronation of King Charles II. Since the



coronation of King Charles II the regalia have been kept in the Tower of London under the guardianship of the Keeper of the Jewel House.

The regalia play an important part in the ritual of the coronation ceremony, for each item is symbolic.

The following items of the regalia are borne in

procession to the altar before the actual service begins:

- **St Edward's Crown**
- **the Imperial State Crown**
- **the Orb**
- **the Sceptre with the Cross**
- **the Sceptre with the Dove**
- **the Jewelled State Sword**
- **the Great Sword of State**
- **the Swords of Justice**
- **the Sword of Mercy**
- **the Golden Spurs**
- **the Armills or Bracelets**
- **the Coronation Ring**
- **the Ampulla and the anointing Spoon**

They are placed upon the altar by the officiating dignitaries of the Church, and, with the exception of four of the Swords, each is in turn presented to the Sovereign before he is enthroned.

The Ampulla and the anointing Spoon

The Ampulla and the Spoon are used for the anointing, which follows the formal Recognition of the Sovereign by his people and his taking of the Coronation Oath. The anointing ceremony is the most solemn moment of the whole coronation, for it is then that the Sovereign is hallowed and consecrated to his task. Holy oil is poured from the Ampulla into the anointing Spoon and is applied by the officiating bishop or archbishop to the Sovereign's head, breast and palms.

The Ampulla is in the form of a hollow gold vessel shaped like an eagle, with outstretched wings standing on a pedestal. It is nine inches in height and the weight is about ten ounces of gold. The neck unscrews, permitting the vessel to be filled with oil, and there is a hole in the break through which the oil may be poured.

The anointing Spoon is made of heavily gilded silver. The handle is richly ornamented and set with pearls. The Spoon, probably dating from the thirteenth century, is thus the oldest element of the Regalia.

The Spurs

When the Sovereign has been anointed, the Lord Chamberlain touches his heels with the Golden Spurs, which are symbols of knightly chivalry. A King Regnant touches the Spurs with his hand. The Spurs are made of solid gold, richly chased.

The Swords

Five Swords are used during the coronation. After the Spurs have been returned to the altar, the Archbishop of Canterbury takes **the Jewelled State Sword** from the Keeper of the Jewel House, and accompanied by the Archbishop of York and Bishops of London and Winchester and other bishops assisting, he, approaches the Sovereign and delivers the Sword into his or her right hand. The Sword is then girt about the Sovereign accompanied by this exhortation: *“With this sword do justice, stop the growth of iniquity, protect the Holy Church of God, help to defend widows and orphans, restore the things that are gone to decay, maintain the things that are restored, punish and reform what is amiss and confirm what is in good order: doing these things you may be glorious in all virtue; and so faithfully serve our Lord Jesus Christ in this life that you may reign for ever with Him in the life which is to come”*. The Sword is then handed to the Archbishop of Canterbury by the Sovereign himself, who shows by this act that he places his Sword at the service of the Church.



The Jewelled State Sword was made for the coronation of King George IV and is the most elaborate and brilliant of the various Swords which belong to the regalia. Its jewels are in the shapes of the floral symbols of the United Kingdom: the rose for England, the thistle for Scotland, and the shamrock for Ireland. It is the only sword actually presented to the Sovereign during the Coronation; the others are merely borne in front of the Sovereign. The Sword of State is the largest sword in the collection, and is borne in front of the Monarch by the Lord Great Chamberlain both at the coronation and at the State Opening of Parliament.

The Armills

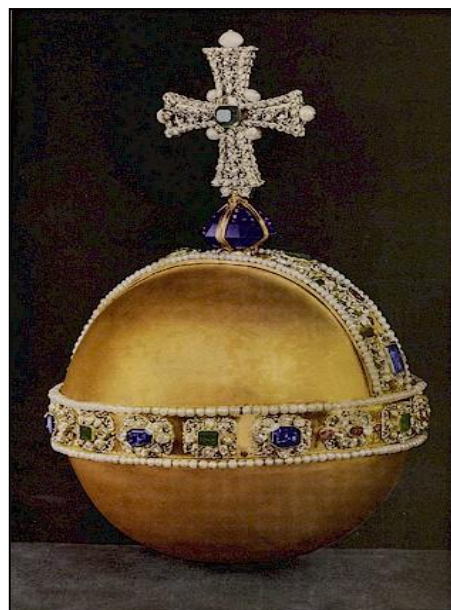
After being girt with the Sword the Sovereign is invested with the Armills and Bracelets. They were made by the Crown Jewellers of pure gold, and are decorated only by two narrow bands of engraving and a single Tudor rose, which serves as a clasp. The **Armills** symbolize sincerity and wisdom. Upon Queen Elizabeth II's coronation, a new set of gold armills was produced and presented on the behalf

of various Commonwealth governments, namely: the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa, Pakistan, Ceylon, and Southern Rhodesia.

The Orb

Following investiture with the Armills, the Sovereign is clothed with garments which signify the religious aspect of kingship. When the Sovereign is robed he is seated in **King Edward's Chair**, and the King's Orb or **Orb of England** is brought and placed in his right hand.

The Orb, a golden globe six inches in diameter surmounted by a great amethyst upon which is the Cross, is the symbol of independent sovereignty under the Cross, representing the Sovereign's role as **Defender of the Faith**, and the symbol of the world ruled by Christianity. The **Sovereign's Orb** is a hollow golden sphere made in 1661. There is a band of jewels running along the centre, and a half-band on the top hemisphere. For a part of the coronation, it is borne in the Sovereign's left hand. The Orb also form part of this priceless and unique collection.



The Coronation Ring

When the Orb has been returned to the altar the Coronation Ring - "*the ensign of kingly dignity*" - is placed on the fourth finger of the Sovereign's right hand. The Ring is sometimes called "*the Wedding Ring of England*", and is set with a sapphire in a circle of diamonds surmounted with St George's Cross in rubies.

The Ring was made for **William IV's** coronation in 1831. Previously, each Sovereign received a new ring to symbolise their "marriage" to the nation, though no new rings have been used since 1831.

The Sceptres

The presentation of the Sceptres follows upon the presentation of the Ring. **The Sceptre with the Cross** signifies royal power and justice, and **the Sceptre with the Dove** signifies equity and mercy. The first Sceptre was made of gold and richly jeweled. It contains a great heart-shaped diamond, which is the largest of the Stars of Africa cut from the Cullinan diamond and was inserted at the order of King Edward VII. The jewel above the Star of Africa is



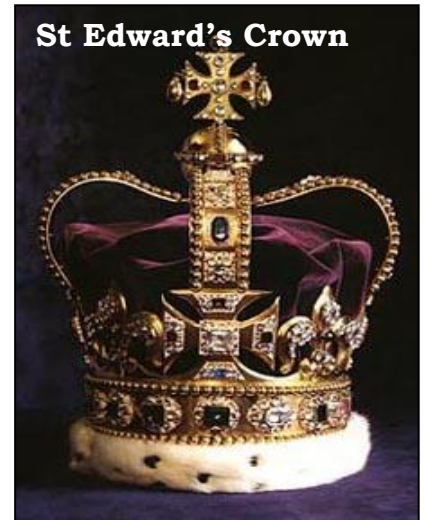
an amethyst in the shape of an orb, over which is a diamond and emerald cross. During the coronation, the monarch bears the Sceptre with the Cross in the right hand.



Crown.

St Edward's Crown

The culminating point of the investiture is the actual crowning ceremony, at which St Edward's Crown is placed upon the head of the Sovereign. St Edward's Crown was made in 1661. It is made of gold set with diamonds, rubies, sapphires, emeralds and pearls. Above the band are alternating crosses and fleurs-de-lis, and over these stretch two complete arches symbolizing the heredity and independence of the monarchy. Decorating the edges of the arches are rows of pearls. St Edward's Crown is very heavy – it weighs over 2,3 kilos – and therefore it rests upon the head of the Sovereign for only a few moments. It's later exchanged for the lighter Imperial Crown of State.



The Imperial Crown of State



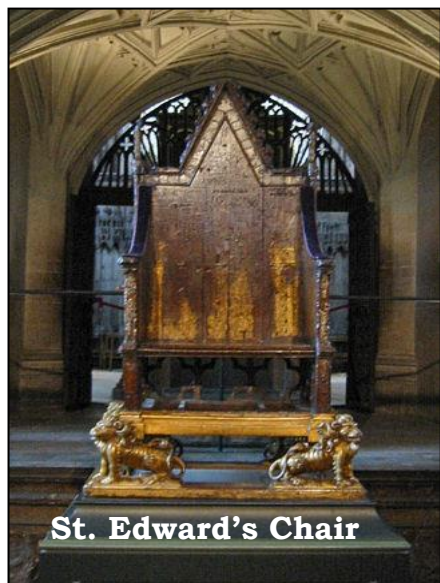
The Imperial Crown of State is the crown worn by the Sovereign upon all state occasions. It was made in 1937 for King George VI, and was similar to the one made in 1838 for Queen Victoria. The present Crown has two complete arches which pass from front to back and from side to side, and on the top is the central orb surmounted by a jeweled cross. The wide jewelled base of the Crown has set in its centre the second "Star of Africa". Above the jeweled band are alternating gem-studded crosses and fleurs-de-lis. The central stone of the central cross is the famous ruby of "the Black Prince" which was first heard in 1367, when it was already several hundred years old. At the point of intersection of the two arches, on the top of the Crown, hang four large pearls, once the earrings of Queen Elizabeth I; and in the jeweled cross

surmounting the orb is King Edward the Confessor's sapphire. In all, the Imperial State Crown contains 2,783 diamonds, 277 pearls, 16 sapphires, 11 emeralds and 4 rubies. It's worn after the conclusion of the Coronation ceremony when the monarch leaves Westminster Abbey, and also at the annual State Opening of Parliament.

The Collection of Crown Jewels contains various crowns, some of which are used by every Sovereign, others being made personally for Sovereigns or for Queens Consort. Typically the Crown of a King has a slightly pointed arched top, while that of a Queen has a slightly bowed top.

The Crown Jewels have been kept at the **Tower of London** since 1303 after they were stolen from Westminster Abbey. It is thought that most, if not all, were recovered shortly afterwards. After the coronation of Charles II, they were locked away and shown for a viewing fee paid to a custodian. However, this arrangement ended when Colonel Thomas Blood stole the Crown Jewels after having bound and gagged the custodian. Thereafter, the Crown Jewels were kept in a part of the Tower known as Jewel House, where armed guards defend them. They were temporarily taken out of the Tower in the Second World War. It was reported that they were secretly kept in the basement vaults of the Sun Life Insurance company in Montreal, Canada, during World War II, along with the gold bullion of the Bank of England. However it has also been said that they were kept in the Round Tower of Windsor Castle, or the Fort Knox Bullion Depository.

Coronation Chair



This oak Chair was made for King Edward I by Master Walter of Durham. It was designed to hold an ancient Stone of Scone seized from the Scots in 1296. For Coronation the Chair is moved to a position in the Sanctuary. Since 1308 it has been used at the Coronation of every Sovereign. Only two, Edward V and Edward VIII, were never crowned.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- divine – божественный, святой, священный
- descent – происхождение
- deification – культ, обожествление
- rigid – жёсткий, суровый
- provision – положение
- incursion – вторжение, вмешательство
- regalia – регалии (традиционные символы королевской власти)
- mug – кружка
- ampulla – ампула, сосуд
- to anoint – совершать помазание
- outstretched – развёрнутый
- gilded – позолоченный
- spur – шпора
- solid gold – чистое золото
- chase – преследовать
- to girt - окаймлять; охватывать
- exhortation – призыв
- armills - браслеты
- orb – держава
- sceptre – скипетр
- investiture – облачение, одеяние
- ruby – рубин
- sapphire – сапфир
- emerald – изумруд
- pearl – жемчуг
- custodian – хранитель
- sanctuary – святилище, святая святых, алтарь

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Give the definition of the word “monarchy”?
2. What are the main types of monarchy?
3. What are the main features and historical periods of absolute monarchy?
4. Who are the most remarkable representatives of absolute monarchy?
5. What are the main features of constitutional monarchy?
6. Is monarchy in Britain constitutional or absolute?
7. What is the main role of the monarchy?
8. What is the main value of the monarchy?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. Коронация в Англии не имеет никакого юридического или конституционного значения, поскольку король или королева становятся полноправными монархами с момента смерти его или ее предшественника.
2. Коронация – это прежде всего религиозное событие, это служба, на которой король или королева дают клятву посвятить жизнь служению своему народу, поэтому главу государства в Великобритании не приводит к присяге верховный судья или, тем более, какой-то политик. Коронацию всегда проводили самые высокопоставленные представители Англиканской церкви.
3. Присяга и священный смысл всего события являются основными причинами, почему королева Елизавета II никогда добровольно не отречется от престола.
4. Многие детали церемонии коронации почти не изменились со времен первой коронации в стенах аббатства, когда на Рождество 1066 года короновали Вильгельма Завоевателя.
5. 60 лет спустя ясно, что Англиканской церкви придется стать более гостеприимной. Это значит, что следующая коронация, когда бы она не состоялась, должна будет лучше отражать религиозное разнообразие современного британского общества.
6. Предпосылки возникновения абсолютной монархии в России сложились еще во второй половине 16 в., при Иване Грозном. К концу 17 в. начинает складываться абсолютная монархия как тип государственной власти.
7. С середины 17в. при царе Алексее Михайловиче стали формироваться некоторые элементы абсолютизма. Юридическое оформление абсолютизма началось при Петре 1. Это выразилось в том, что Россия в 1721 г. была объявлена империей, а Петр – императором.
8. Оформившись при Петре 1, абсолютная монархия продолжала укрепляться при Анне Иоановне, Елизавете, Екатерине II.

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it.

Lesson 2

British Royalty

The monarchy is the oldest secular institution in the United Kingdom going back at least to the 9th century. Queen Elizabeth II can trace her descent from **king Egbert**, who united all England under his sovereignty in 829.

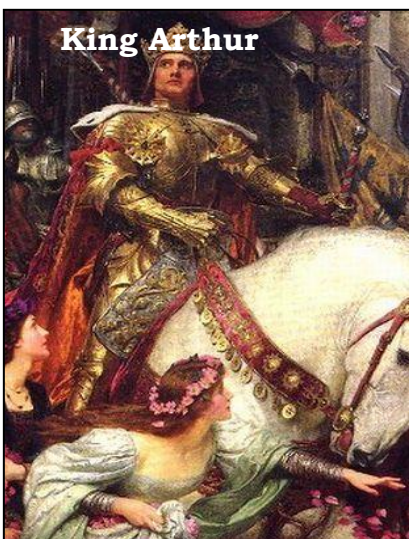
DYNASTY	MONARCH	YEARS OF REIGN
<i>Saxon kings</i>	<i>Alfred the Great</i>	871-899
	<i>Edward the Elder</i>	899-924
	<i>Athelstan</i>	924-939
	<i>Edmund I</i>	939-946
	<i>Edred</i>	946-955
	<i>Edwy the Fair</i>	955-959
	<i>Edgar the Peaceful</i>	959-975
	<i>Edward the Martyr</i>	975-978
	<i>Aethelred</i>	978-1016
	<i>Edmund II</i>	1016
<i>Danish kings</i>	<i>Canute</i>	1016-1035
	<i>Harold I Harefoot</i>	1035-1040
	<i>Hardercanute</i>	1040-1042
<i>Saxon kings</i>	<i>Edward the Confessor</i>	1042-1066
	<i>Harold II</i>	1066
<i>Norman kings</i>	<i>William the Conqueror</i>	1066-1087
	<i>William II</i>	1087-1100
	<i>Henry I</i>	1100-1135
	<i>Stephen</i>	1135-1154
<i>The Plantagenets</i>	<i>Henry II</i>	1154-1189
	<i>Richard I the Lion-Heart</i>	1189-1199
	<i>John Lackland</i>	1199-1216
	<i>Henry III</i>	1216-1272
	<i>Edward I</i>	1272-1307
	<i>Edward II</i>	1307-1327
	<i>Edward III</i>	1327-1377
	<i>Richard II</i>	1377-1399
<i>The Lancastrians</i>	<i>Henry IV</i>	1399-1413
	<i>Henry V</i>	1413-1422
	<i>Henry VI</i>	1422-1461
<i>The Yorks</i>	<i>Edward IV</i>	1461-1483
	<i>Edward V</i>	1483
	<i>Richard III</i>	1483-1485

<i>The Tudors</i>	<i>Henry VII</i>	<i>1485-1509</i>
	<i>Henry VIII</i>	<i>1509-1547</i>
	<i>Edward VI</i>	<i>1547-1553</i>
	<i>Mary I</i>	<i>1553-1558</i>
	<i>Elizabeth I</i>	<i>1558-1603</i>
<i>The Stuarts</i>	<i>James I</i>	<i>1603-1625</i>
	<i>Charles I</i>	<i>1625-1649</i>
	<i>REPUBLIC</i>	<i>1649-1660</i>
	<i>Charles II</i>	<i>1660-1685</i>
	<i>James II</i>	<i>1685-1688</i>
	<i>William III and Mary II</i>	<i>1689-1702</i>
	<i>Anne</i>	<i>1702-1714</i>
<i>The House of Hanover</i>	<i>George I</i>	<i>1714-1727</i>
	<i>George II</i>	<i>1727-1760</i>
	<i>George III</i>	<i>1760-1820</i>
	<i>George IV</i>	<i>1820-1830</i>
	<i>William IV</i>	<i>1830-1837</i>
<i>Saxe-Coburg-Gotha</i>	<i>Victoria</i>	<i>1837-1901</i>
	<i>Edward VII</i>	<i>1901-1910</i>
	<i>George V</i>	<i>1910-1936</i>
<i>The House of Windsor</i>	<i>Edward VIII</i>	<i>1936</i>
	<i>George VI</i>	<i>1936-1952</i>
	<i>Elizabeth II</i>	<i>1952-2022</i>
	<i>Charles III</i>	<i>2022 -</i>
	<i>The House of Windsor became the House of Windsor Mountbatten from 1995</i>	

ANGLO-SAXON KINGS

(440 - 1066)

During the fifth century a number of tribes from the north-western European mainland invaded and settled in Britain in large numbers. Two of these tribes were the Angles and the Saxons. These Anglo-Saxons soon had the south-east of the country in their grasp. In the west of the country their advance was temporarily halted by an army of Celtic Britons under the command of the legendary **King Arthur**. King Arthur provides a wonderful example of the distortions of popular history. In folklore and myth he is a great English hero.



There are many stories about King Arthur, e.g. that he pulled his sword Excalibur from a stone, and that he sat with his knights at a Round

Table. Nobody knows if the stories are true, but they are very popular and have been used in poems, plays and films.

Anglo-Saxon Britain was not a united country. There were a lot of small kingdoms which constantly waged wars against one another for supreme power. As a result, these little kingdoms were weak and could not hold out against attacks from abroad.

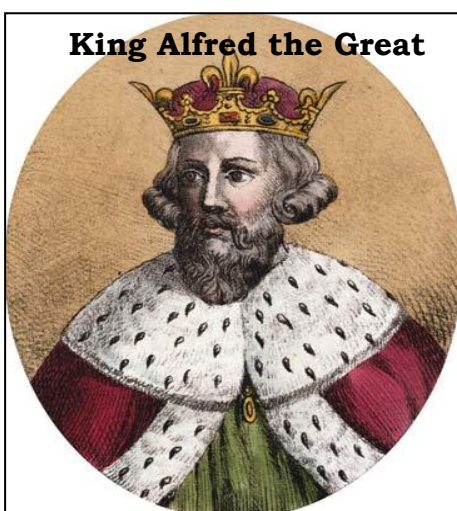
Beginning with the 8th century, pirates from Scandinavia and Denmark began raiding the eastern shores of Britain. They are known in English history as the Danes. Gradually they began settling in Britain and seized more and more land.

The Anglo-Saxons understood that their small kingdoms must unite in order to struggle against the Danes successfully. In the 9th century **Egbert**, the king of Wessex, one of the strongest Anglo-Saxon kingdoms, united several neighbouring kingdoms. The united kingdom got the name of England, and Egbert became the first king of the united country.



Alfred the Great, the grandson of Egbert, became king in 871, when England's danger was greatest. By that time the Danes had been present in the British Isles for at least a hundred years. During the first four years of his reign Alfred bought peace for his people by paying tribute to the Danes. At first the invaders seemed satisfied, but in 875, after collecting their tribute they didn't leave Wessex as they had done before. In a few years Alfred gathered a strong army. He defeated the invading Danes and forced them to leave Wessex. In the historians' opinion, Alfred rightly earned the title "King of England", though in reality he governed perhaps a quarter of the land which is now known as **England**.

Alfred is the only king of England who got the name "the Great." And he was really a great king.



He was very well educated for his time. He had learnt to read and write when he was quite young. He had travelled on the continent and visited France. He knew Latin. He is famous not only for having built the first navy, but also for having tried to enlighten his people. He actively supported education in the country. He began to demand that other nobles of the land should learn to read. He opened schools for them and brought many Latin scholars from the continent to teach at these schools.

He worked out a **code of laws**. He translated the Church history and parts of the Bible from Latin into Anglo-Saxon. He started the famous "**Anglo-Saxon Chronicle**", which is the first history of England: it begins with the history of the early Britons. "The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle" was continued by various authors for 250 years after the death of Alfred.

The last years of Alfred's life were more peaceful and devoted to learning. When Alfred died in 899, he left a culture which would be remembered for centuries.

Edward the Confessor

Edward the Confessor was the king of England from 1042 to 1066. He was considered a very holy man, and in 1061 the Pope made him a saint and gave him the title of 'Confessor'. However he doesn't seem to have been very interested in government.

The famous Westminster Abbey in London was built during his reign, and when he died in 1066 he was buried in the Abbey. His brother-in-law Harold became king, but was soon removed by William of Normandy in the Norman Conquest of 1066.

NORMAN KINGS

(1066 - 1154)

The successful Norman invasion of England in 1066 brought Britain into the mainstream of western European culture. Throughout this period the English kings ruled over areas of land on the continent and were often at war with the French kings in disputes over ownership.

The strong system of government which the Normans introduced meant that the Anglo-Norman kingdom was the most powerful political force in the British Isles. The authority of the English monarch gradually extended to other parts of these islands in the next 250 years.

For a hundred and fifty years after the time of Alfred the Great people were continually fighting one another all over England. What the country needed was a strong king who could keep order.

In France there was the Duke Robert of Normandy, a cousin of King Edward the Confessor of



England. When his son William was 24 years old he came to England to visit his relative. When William saw what a green and pleasant country England was, he wanted very much to be its king. King Edward the Confessor liked his young nephew and promised him the crown.

At the same time there was in England a young Saxon named Harold, who was the son of the Earl of Wessex, one of the most powerful English nobles of the time. Most Saxon nobles didn't want a French king, and after Edward the Confessor's death they proclaimed Harold King of England.

William gathered a great army and sailed across the English Channel on hundreds of ships. Harold's army met him on the English coast. There was a great battle at Hastings on October 14, 1066.

Harold's soldiers fought bravely, but William's army was stronger. Harold was killed in the battle, and with the death of their leader the English understood that the battle was lost.

So a Norman duke became King of England – **William the Conqueror** or **William I**. He was crowned in Westminster Abbey on Christmas Day, the 25th of December, 1066.

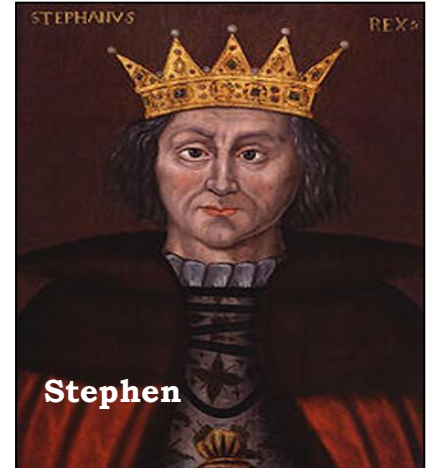
William won the contest, and for the next hundred years England was ruled by Norman kings. The Normans brought about a major change – they ended England's isolation. Indeed, until 1558, English monarchs owned a part of France – at times the major part.

Scotland and Ireland retained their independence under the Norman kings. Wales already had links with the Saxon kings, and within a few years the Normans overran southern Wales. But for centuries northern Wales remained independent of the Normans.

William I gave power and land in England to other Normans, and built many castles to control the English people.

The Normans brought over their architects from the Continent, who helped plan big Romanesque churches and cathedrals. Romanesque was a style of Western European architecture from the 10th to 13th centuries. Norman builders had only simple equipment with which to build their great cathedrals and churches, but the results were spectacular.

To protect himself from possible attacks of the Saxons, William ordered to build a strong tower on the left bank of the Thames. This tower still stands. It's called **the White Tower** because it is built of white stone. Later other buildings were added and the whole place was surrounded by a stone wall to form a strong fortress which we know now as **the Tower of London**. The Tower of London is known by its more famous name: it was once the main residence of all English kings from William II to Henry VII.



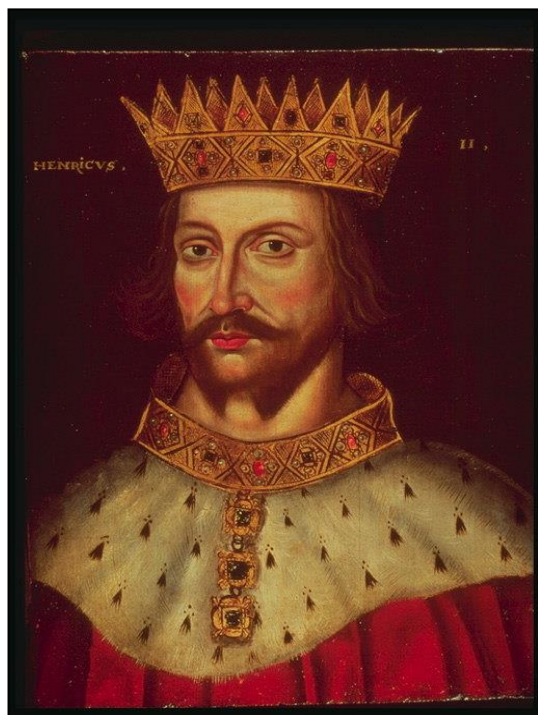
Medieval England

THE PLANTAGENETS

(1126 - 1399)

After William the Conqueror's death in 1087, three more kings of the Norman dynasty ruled England: his two sons, **William II and Henry I**, and his grandson, the son of his daughter, **Stephen**. After Stephen's death, the last of the Norman kings, the English throne passed to the **Plantagenet dynasty** – the name of the family to which all the kings of England from 1126 to 1485 belonged.

The Plantagenets ruled England for almost 250 years. These were years of strife and violence but



they also saw the beginnings of English democracy in the birth of Parliament. It was Plantegenet kings who fought the Hundred Years War against the French, initially winning most of the battles but losing the war and most of England's French possessions.

The name Plantagenet was a nickname for the founder of the dynasty, Geoffrey of Anjou, who wore a sprig of broom, '*planta genista*', ('*plant a genet*' or *broom, a bush with small yellow flowers*) as a badge.

The first Plantagenet king was **Henry II**, the grandson of Henry I, and the last was **Richard II**. Henry II immediately set about ruthlessly destroying the castles of those barons who had opposed him during Stephen's reign. He also wanted more control over the church, which had a powerful hold over

ordinary people during these times.

Henry II had four strong-willed and unruly sons: Henry, Richard, Geoffrey and John. Henry, the eldest, was known as the Young King because his father had him crowned during his own lifetime to protect the succession. Henry gave each of his three elder sons lands from his French possessions. But John received no territories to rule and so people at the time nicknamed him **Lackland**. Henry and Geoffrey both died before their father. Henry fought against Richard and John. Henry's sons never succeeded in overthrowing him. Despite the terrible quarrel with Thomas Becket, Henry II was one of the

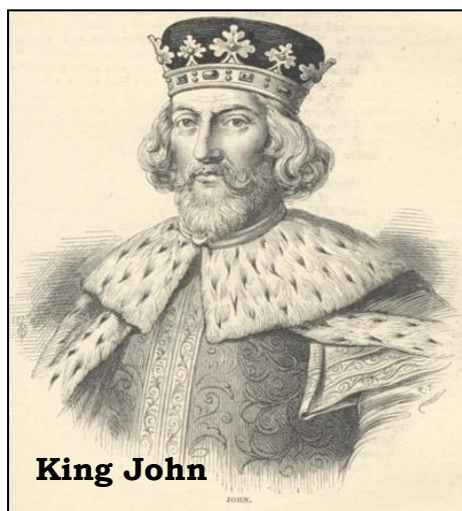


most powerful rulers of the Middle Ages. A man of great humour but violent temper, he brought England a time of peace and prosperity. He set up the Exchequer to supervise monetary and fiscal matters. This is still does. England had the most centrally organized government in Europe. He created the common law system, according to which every freeman had a right to plead in royal courts, even against his feudal lords.

Since the Norman times Anglo-Norman knights had become involved in the crusades. The crusades were a series of military expeditions undertaken by European Christians. The aim was to recover the Holy Lands, where Christianity began, from Muslim occupation. There were eight major crusades from

1095 to 1270, most of which were failures, though a Christian kingdom of Jerusalem was briefly

established. During the Middle Ages, many men and women made journeys, called pilgrimages, to Jerusalem and other holy places in Palestine where Jesus had lived and died. The Christian Church had lost control of the Holy Lands to the Arabs in the 7th century. The Arabs were Muslims. At first they let Christian pilgrims visit the holy places. But when Muslim Turks invaded the region they began to attack the Christian pilgrims.



English knights were among the main participants in the Third Crusade. The great Muslim leader Saladin had recaptured Jerusalem from the crusaders in 1187. **Richard I** was the second king of the Plantagenet dynasty, following his father King Henry II. He came to the throne in 1189 as a soldier already admired for his skill and courage. His bravery earned him the name **Richard the Lion-Heart**. He was famous for his good education (he knew Latin and was fond of music and poetry). His contemporaries described him as a man of excellent manners, kind to his friends and

merciless to his enemies. Richard was the complete cosmopolitan military adventurer – tough, glamorous, a brilliant general and a restless wanderer.

One of the historians said: “Few English Kings have played so small part in the affairs of England and so large part in the affairs of Europe as Richard I.” He spent the first part of his rule abroad fighting in the Third Crusade. He spent his later years fighting against the French, where he wanted to defend his French lands. He was killed in one of the battles in France, and having no legitimate children the English throne passed to his brother **John**.

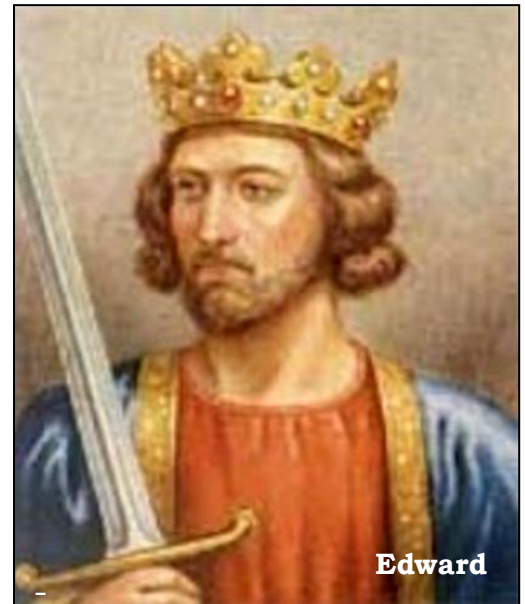
King John was the youngest son of Henry II and became king after the death of his brother, having previously tried to take power from him. He wasn't a popular or successful king. He lost most of the English land in France, quarreled with the Church confiscating Church property, so in 1213 the Pope declared that John was no longer the rightful king of England, and granted Philip of France the right to depose him. As John had already angered his English barons by taxing them harshly and abusing feudal rights, it wasn't long before the English barons joined the forces and rebelled against the king.

In June 1215 the richest and most powerful sections of English society – the aristocracy, the Church and the merchants formed the coalition against the King and forced John to sign the **Magna Carta**, or Great Charter which limited his royal powers and confirmed the rights of the barons against the king. It laid the foundation for British democracy. 1215 is one of the most important dates in British history.

Henry III came to the throne aged only nine as John's eldest son. In his youth the country was well-governed for him by William Marshal, Earl of Pembroke. Although Henry was pious and sensitive

man, he was completely without any ability to govern by himself. The English barons rebelled against his favouritism and promotion of foreign men at Court.

Edward I, the eldest son of Henry III, was 33 when he came to the throne in 1272. He might be taken as a pattern of the medieval King. He was the first Norman king of England called Edward. He was nicknamed “Longshanks” because he was very tall and had long arms and legs. He was brisk, capable and skillful general, a strong and respected leader. His love of order led him to reform the government. The many laws passed in Edward’s reign have earned him the nickname of the Lawgiver. He was the first English king to use Parliament as an instrument of government to reform the law of the land. Among his early reforms was the Statute of Wales marked the end of Wales as separate country, but left Welsh common law, language and customs.



In 1296 Edward invaded Scotland. For ten years after this Scotland was without a king. Edward tried to rule it himself, but he was defied by William Wallace, who led an uprising and made himself master of Scotland. Wallace was an extraordinary general who managed to inspire half-armed peasant foot soldiers to take on the might of mail-clad knights. However, Edward reconquered the country and captured Wallace, who was put to death in 1305. As a result Edward I was called ‘Hammer of the Scots’.

Edward I was also a formidable administrator, a great builder and a statesman of European reputation.

The first Prince of Wales **Edward II**, the fourth son of Edward I, became king in 1307. His older brothers had all died when he was a boy. Edward relied very much on his friends and favourites, and they in turn influenced his decisions in matters of state, to the fury of the barons. He took his armies to Scotland but was defeated at the battle of Bannockburn by Robert the Bruce. He was a weak king who upset the English barons, and in 1327 his son Edward III replaced him. Later that year he was murdered.



Edward III was only 14 years old when he came to the throne of England. His mother, Isabella of France, and her lover, Roger Mortimer, Earl of March, had ordered Edward II’s murder in 1327, and had secured Edward III’s succession with Parliament’s support. The Hundred Years War between England and France was a series of wars Edward III started in 1337, when Charles IV of France died without a direct heir. Edward wanted to secure his claim to the

French throne through his mother, Isabella of France. Another cause of the Hundred Years War was the wool trade. The weavers of Flanders depended on English wool, and England's wool was their only source of income apart from farming. But the aristocratic rulers of Flanders were pro-French and attempted to curb the English wool trade. Edward made a treaty with the Flemish weavers.

Edward had continuing problems with the Scots, but during Edward's reign the greatest disaster befell Europe. In only twenty years the Black Death (bubonic plague carried by rats from Asia) killed about one third of Europe's population. The disease got its name from the spots of blood that formed under the skin and turned black. The Black Death halted Edward III's campaign against Scotland. Scotland, Ireland and Wales, however, suffered less severely than England.

Edward III possessed the ability and determination to restore Royal authority in England. He was notably successful in his dealings with the barons; he had no favourites, and he brought many of the leading barons into the royal circle as **Knights of the Garter**, which he established in 1348.

Edward III's eldest son, Edward, Prince of Wales, was as fine a soldier as his father, and is known as **the Black Prince** because of the colour of his armour. He distinguished himself by his bravery at the battles but, while fighting in Spain the Black Prince caught an infection which made him ill and he died in 1376, one year before his father.

When **Richard II**, Edward III's grandson, succeeded Edward III he was only 10 years old and inherited the cost of the Hundred Years War which left the Crown deeply in debt. Richard was too young to rule, so the country was governed for a decade by his uncles. Their rule wasn't popular and the introduction of heavy taxes led to the Peasants' Revolt in 1381.

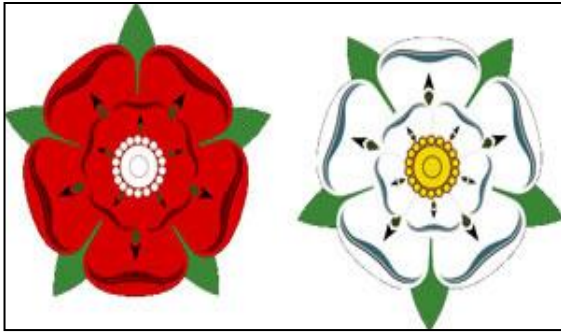
Richard II was a lover of art not of warfare and suffered from being unfairly compared with his father, the Black Prince, who was a great soldier. The rest of Richard's rule was spent trying to control the other powerful men of the country, particularly Henry Bolingbroke. In 1398 Richard sent Henry abroad, but he returned the following year and seized power. Richard was put in prison, where he died, possibly murdered.

LANCASTER AND YORK

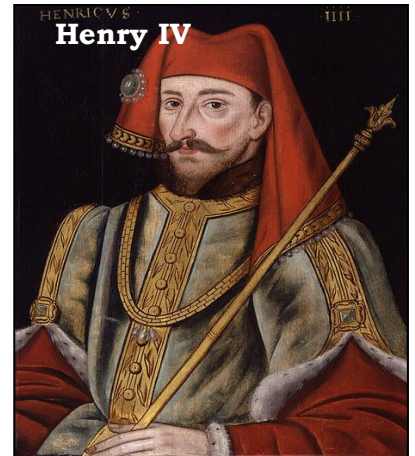
(1399 - 1485)

The Plantagenets were a fierce and quarrelsome family, and never more so than when disputing the right to the throne. During the reign of Richard II, the last king of the Plantagenet dynasty, Henry Bolingbroke, Duke of Lancaster (grandson of Edward III and cousin of Richard II) seized the crown and became the first king of the Lancaster dynasty, **Henry IV**. He was the first British king whose native language was English. He spent much of his reign fighting rebellions, as well as a major national uprising in Wales.

Henry V and son of Henry IV is regarded as a symbol of English patriotism and is chiefly



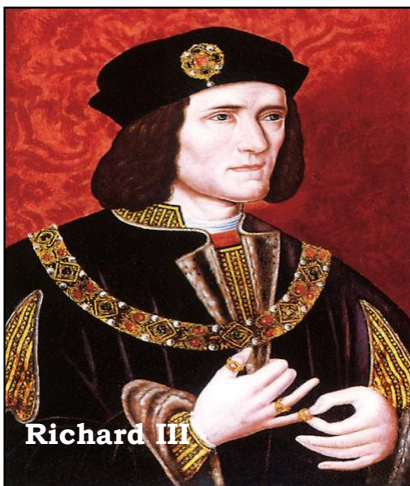
remembered for his victories against the French. He was a chivalrous soldier and sensible ruler; but his gains in France were lost on his death. Henry died of



dysentery, a common disease among armies at that time.

Henry VI and son of Henry V was not popular, mainly because England finally lost the Hundred Years War while he was king. Opposition to him led to the **Wars of the Roses** which began between **the Lancastrians** and **the Yorkists**. Henry was a gentle and a pious man, but weak both physically and mentally.

The interests of the **House of Lancaster** supported by the big barons collided with the interests of the lesser barons and merchants of the towns, who supported the **House of York**. The Lancastrians had a red rose in their coat-of-arms, the Yorkists had a white rose. That's why the war between them got the name of "the Wars of the Roses". This war, which lasted for thirty years (1455-1485), turned into a bitter struggle for the Crown, in which each party murdered every likely heir to the throne of the opposite party. It was a dark time for England, a time of anarchy, when the kings and nobles were busy fighting and murdering each other and had no time to take care of the common people, who suffered greatly.



Edward IV, the son of Duke of York, defeated the soldiers of Henry VI. Henry was put in the Tower of London, where he was murdered. Edward was the first Yorkist king. He was a very tall, handsome and strong leader who brought a period of peace and prosperity to England. Edward encouraged the development of art, music, as well as the new science of printing. Edward had two young sons, and his rule and succession seemed secure. But at the age of 40 he was taken ill, and died within ten days. His twelve-year-old son, Edward, succeeded him in 1483. But under the protectorship of his uncle, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, the reign of his young boy lasted just 11 weeks and one day. **Richard III** became the last Yorkist king. He was an energetic and competent king

but made many enemies. He is often thought of as a cruel and violent king, who probably ordered the murder of the Princes in the Tower, but not all historians accept this view. Edward was doubtless murdered by the duke's men, though no conclusive evidence has ever been produced to prove that Richard was guilty. In 1674 the skeleton of Edward was discovered during the alterations in the Tower.

Richard's only son died in 1484. The heir to the throne was a Lancastrian, Henry Tudor who struck against Richard in 1485 at the battle of Bosworth Field. Richard was killed by Henry Tudor, who became King Henry VII. Richard was so loathed by his enemies that after his death he was buried without ceremony and later his bones were thrown out and his coffin used as a horse trough.

Absolute monarchy

THE TUDORS

(1485 - 1603)

The beginning of the Tudor period in British history also signaled the end of the Middle Ages. The old feudal ways of life had largely disappeared and a new aristocracy was emerging. This was a period of great exploration and expansion in overseas trade, which gave the country a new source of wealth. The ideas of the Renaissance marked the beginnings of modern culture and science. The Protestant Reformation, which began in Germany in an attempt to correct some of the worst features of the Roman Catholic Church, was adopted in England at first as a political move, and later as a matter of faith. The Tudors finally united Wales and England, so that one set of laws and rights applied to both countries. They also tried to complete the conquest of Ireland by settling English colonists in large estates there which were called 'plantations'. Scotland suffered years of violent conflict.

The Wars of the Roses ended with the battle of Bosworth in 1485. The Yorkist King Richard III of



the House of York was killed in the battle, and, right in the field the Lancastrian **Henry Tudor**, Earl of Richmond, was proclaimed King of England – **Henry VII**. The war was over at last, and everybody sighed with relief. Henry married the Yorkist heiress Princess Elizabeth of York. This marriage was of great political importance. It meant the union of the red rose of the House of Lancaster with the white rose of the House of

York. Tudor rose became the symbol of the Tudor family. It was a combination of the white rose and the red rose.

Born Henry Tudor, he was brought up in France. Henry VII was religious, hard-working and clever. He restored peace, justice and prosperity after years of conflict and civil war. Although there were rebellions during his rule, Henry established greater order in the country, introduced a more modern system of government and greatly improved the country's financial position.

Henry firmly believed that business was good for the state. Only a year after he became king, he made an important trade agreement with the Netherlands, which allowed English trade to grow. Henry understood that England's future wealth would depend on international trade. He built a huge fleet of merchant ships. He also believed that wars ruined a country's economy, and so he avoided quarrels either with Scotland in the north or France in the south.

Henry was fortunate. Many of the old nobility had died or been defeated in the recent wars, and their lands had gone to the king. This meant that Henry had more money than earlier kings. In order to strengthen his power, he forbade anyone, except himself, to keep armed men. Of course it made him unpopular with the old nobility, but he kept the friendship of the merchant and gentry classes. Like him they wanted peace and prosperity. He created a new nobility from among them, and men unknown before now became Henry's statesmen. They all knew that their rise to importance was completely dependent on the Crown.

The Tudor dynasty (**Henry VII, Henry VIII, Mary I, Elizabeth I**) established a system of government departments, staffed by professionals who depended for their position on the monarch. As a result the feudal monarchs were no longer needed for implementing government policy. They were also needed less for making government policy. Parliament was traditionally split into two 'Houses': the House of Lords and the House of Commons. The House of Lords consisted of the feudal aristocracy and the leaders of the Church. The House of Commons consisted of representatives from the towns and the less important landowners in rural areas. It was now more important for monarchs to get the agreement of the Commons for policy-making because that was where the newly powerful merchants and landowners (the people with the money) were represented.

Henry VIII is one of the most famous of all English kings, partly because he had six wives. But he was quite unlike his father. He spent so much on maintaining a rich court and on wars, that his father's carefully saved money was soon gone. Henry loved entertainments. At one banquet he provided "24 great beeves, 100 fat muttons, 91 pigs 14 dozen swans." He played several musical instruments, composed songs and enjoyed dancing. Henry was well-educated and he enjoyed discussing religion, art and other Renaissance subjects.

Henry VIII wanted to have an important influence on European politics. But much had happened in Europe since England had lost its lands in France in the Hundred Years' War. France was now more powerful than England. Spain was even more powerful, because it was united with the Holy Roman Empire.

Henry disliked the power of the Church in England: it was an international organization, so he couldn't completely control it. The power of the Catholic Church in England could work against Henry's authority.

In 1531 the Church of England was established in the country, and this became law after Parliament passed ‘the Act of Supremacy in 1534’.

Henry’s break with Rome was purely political. He simply wanted to control the Church and to keep its wealth in his own kingdom. Between 1532 and 1536 Parliament passed several Acts, by which England officially became a Protestant country, even though the popular religion was still Catholic. In 1536 Henry closed all the smaller monasteries and confiscated their property to help his finances. In 1539 all the larger monasteries were closed. In just 10 years Henry VIII closed all of England’s 800 monasteries.

In 1536 Henry decided that Wales should be united with England. By the Act of Union it became part of England. English law was extended to Wales, with English as the official language of the law courts.

Having made himself Supreme Head of the Church in England, Henry decided to extend his powers to Ireland, where the English owned large estates. In 1541, an Irish Parliament was called in Dublin and gave Henry the title of King of Ireland. Henry tried but failed to force Protestantism on Catholic Ireland.

As a young man Henry was known for his love of hunting, sport and music, but he didn’t rule well and the country was in a weak and uncertain state when he died. He left three children. Mary, the eldest, was the daughter of his first wife, Catherine of Aragon. Elizabeth was the daughter of his second wife, Anne Boleyn. Nine-year-old Edward was the son of Jane Seymour who had died giving birth to his only son.

Edward VI was only a child of 10 years old when he became king, so the country was ruled by a council. All the members of the council were representatives of the new nobility created by the Tudors. During this period, with Edward’s support, England became much more strongly Protestant.

Mary I became queen after the death of Edward VI who was 16 years old. Mary was strong-willed, a shrewd politician. Mary was determined to bring back Roman Catholicism to England, and married the Catholic Philip II of Spain. Many Protestants opposed this, and she ordered hundreds of them to be burnt to death, for which she became known as “Bloody Mary”. Mary didn’t have children, and after her death she was replaced by her half-sister Elizabeth I.

Elizabeth I is regarded as one of England’s greatest rulers. She was extremely strong and clever woman who controlled the difficult political and religious situation of the time with great skill. Elizabeth I was a remarkable woman. She received an excellent classical education. She spoke 5 languages besides English: Greek, Latin, French, Italian and Spanish. She was a talented musician, a graceful dancer and a fine archer. She was also a very skilled politician, calculating and extremely clever. Elizabeth said of herself that she had “the body of a weak and feeble woman, but the heart and stomach of a king, and a king of England too”.

She restored the Protestant religion and gradually established the Church of England. Elizabeth I wanted to find a peaceful answer to the problems of the English Reformation. She wanted to bring together again those parts of English society (Catholic and Protestant) which were in disagreement. But Elizabeth made sure that the Church was still under her authority. Elizabeth also introduced a book of sermons to be used in church. Besides the texts of the sermons, based on the Bible, this book also taught the people that rebellion against the Crown was a sin against God.



Elizabeth helped the Dutch Protestants. At that time the Netherlands was part of the Spanish empire, and King Philip II of Spain was trying to suppress the Protestant rebellion there. He sent his army to the Netherlands. Elizabeth did the same. So Philip had to fight with England. He built a huge fleet of ships, which became known as **the Invincible Armada**. England was in danger.

The two fleets were fighting for six days, and on August 9, 1588, the Armada was defeated. Only half the ships of the Armada returned to Spain. It was a great victory for England. The English were proud of their country and their queen.

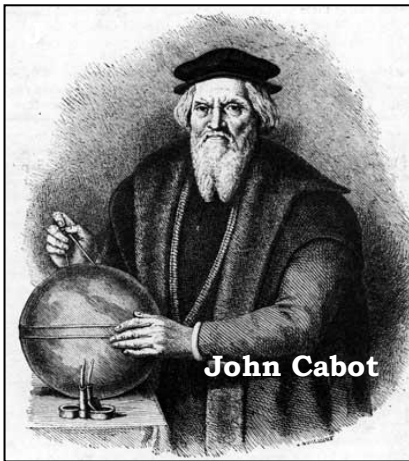
Elizabeth's reign lasted for 45 years. She remained unmarried and independently powerful. During her reign the country's economy grew very strong, the arts were very active. However, Elizabeth is often seen as a very lonely figure and is known as the 'Virgin Queen' because she never married and died without an heir.

Elizabeth's reign saw a flourishing of plays and poetry. The outstanding playwright was William Shakespeare, but at that time he was one of many highly regarded dramatic poets.

During the Tudor period England's foreign policy changed several times. Henry VII was careful to remain friendly with neighbouring countries. His son Henry VIII was more ambitious, hoping to play an important part in European politics. He was unsuccessful. Mary allied England to Spain by her marriage. Elizabeth and her advisers considered trade the most important foreign policy matter, as Henry VII had done. For them a country which was England's greatest trade rival was also its greatest enemy. This idea remained the basis of England's foreign policy until the 19th century.

There were many explorations during the Tudors' reign. When the Italian explorer Christopher Columbus approached Henry VII in 1492 for funds to pay for his voyages of discovery, Henry, known for his financial caution, turned him down. Columbus was eventually funded by King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain. Five years later Henry VII did finance John Cabot's expedition. Cabot was a sailor from

Genoa, Italy. His voyage led to the founding of the first British colony in America, at Newfoundland (in present-day Canada).



Elizabeth I gave Francis Drake, who was an explorer and sea captain, a knighthood. He served Elizabeth loyally and helped England become a major sea power.

Sir Walter Raleigh was a great soldier, explorer, and writer. He became one of the Queen's favourites at Court. Elizabeth wanted colonies



for England – to establish trading posts for merchants and so bring wealth to the country. In 1584, Raleigh sent 100 colonists across the Atlantic to America to find gold and take possession of new lands. Queen Elizabeth was impressed and so he named the new land Virginia after her, because people called her the “Virgin Queen”. Raleigh was also the first person to introduce tobacco and potatoes into England from the American colonies.

THE STUARTS

(1603 - 1714)

The Stuart monarchs were less successful than the Tudors. They quarreled with Parliament and this resulted in civil war. One of the Stuarts was executed. Another Stuart king was driven from the throne. When the last Stuart, Queen Anne, died, the monarchy was no longer absolutely powerful as it had been in the Tudor times.

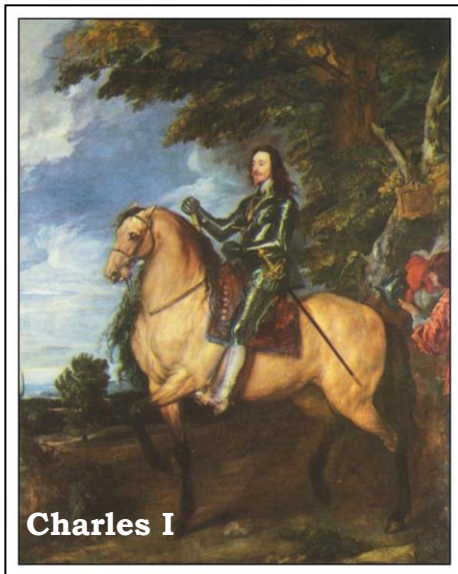


By the end of the Stuart period England and Scotland were formally united, and Ireland was more controlled by the English than before.

Meanwhile, the British were expanding overseas. Many colonies, were set up in North America. The religious tensions at home drove some people abroad to escape persecution. The most famous group was the Pilgrim Fathers, who founded the Plymouth Colony in America in 1620. They left Plymouth in a ship called the ‘Mayflower’ and dropped anchor in Massachusetts. The colony flourished when native American farmers taught the settlers how to grow corn. In the autumn of 1621 they held their first harvest supper. They feasted on geese, turkeys, duck, shellfish, watercress and wine

and invited the native Americans to the first Thanksgiving Day. That day, towards the end of November, is now a national holiday in the United States.

Elsewhere, British traders established settlements in Southern Africa and India which would eventually develop into an empire.



When Elizabeth I of England died without any children in 1603, her relative James VI of Scotland became also **James I** of England and the first English king of the Stuart dynasty. So the crowns of England and Scotland were united. Although their parliaments and administrative and judicial systems continued to be separate.

Like Elizabeth, James I tried to rule without Parliament as much as possible. He had already ruled Scotland for 25 years and believed in the 'divine right of kings': the king was chosen by God and therefore only God could judge him. He expressed these ideas openly and this led to trouble with Parliament. James supported the Protestant Church and was determined to enforce its practices. James I enforced an old law against Roman Catholics which stated that they had to go to Protestant churches, or be fined. A group of Catholics decided to start a revolution by blowing up the Houses of Parliament. The leader of the conspiracy was not, in fact, Guy Fawkes but Robert Catesby. They were executed.

James I is said to have suffered from a stammer and dribbled. But he was an intelligent king who wrote against the evils of tobacco and introduced a new English translation of the Bible. When James I came to the throne there were five English translations of the Bible in use. He ordered a new translation. Fifty churchmen and scholars completed the task in seven years. King James Bible is still the most popular English version after more than 350 years.

On James I's death, his son **Charles I** inherited a difficult financial situation. Charles had a constant struggle to find money by other means to finance himself. Finally he raised taxes without Parliament's consent, but this led to a bitter conflict with those wanting to protect the rights of Parliament. Charles I quarreled with Parliament even more bitterly than his father had done. He tried to rule the country without it. More than once Charles dissolved Parliament, but had to recall it again because he needed money for a war against Scotland. The Parliament refused to help him, and this led to the 'English Civil War'. Its causes were both political and religious. It divided the people of England. Charles I's soldiers (the Royalists or the Cavaliers) were defeated by those of Parliament (the Roundheads) at battles in 1644 and 1645. The Roundhead soldiers were very well organized under Oliver Cromwell. Parliament was supported by the navy, by most of the merchants and by the population of London. The Royalists had no money. In the end the Royalist army was finally defeated. That was the

end of the Civil War. Charles I escaped to Scotland but was handed over to Parliament by the Scots. He was arrested and two years later he was killed by having his head cut off. Charles became the only British monarch to be executed.

Republic in Britain



The execution of Charles I left England firmly in the hands of Parliament and its army. For the next 11 years the country didn't have a king. This period was called **the Commonwealth**.

Several MPs (members of Parliament) had commanded the Parliamentary army during the Civil War. The strongest of them was an English general and politician named **Oliver Cromwell** who studied law in London and sat in Parliament, where he opposed the king. For a short time he ruled England, Scotland and Ireland. He was the real power in the land. In 1653 Oliver dismissed Parliament and became the **Lord Protector** of England, Scotland and Ireland, with almost the same power as a king. He was offered the Crown, but refused to be King Oliver.

He had created a new 'model' army, the first regular force from which the British army of today developed. Cromwell still tried to rule in partnership with Parliament, but they couldn't agree and so instead Cromwell used his army to enforce what he thought was right. To maintain his army he had to increase taxes which made him very unpopular. His other innovations were unpopular too: people were forbidden to celebrate Christmas and Easter because he was a Puritan and a dedicated religious man with a strong personality.

From 1649 till 1660 Britain was a **Republic**. But the republic was not a success. Cromwell and his friends created a government which was far more severe than Charles had been. They had got rid of the monarchy, and now they got rid of the House of Lords.

Scotland was brought under English republican rule. Cromwell took an army to Ireland "to punish the Irish" for the killing of Protestants in 1641 and for the continued Royalist rebellion there. He captured two towns. His soldiers killed about 6 000 people. These killings remained powerful symbols of English cruelty to the Irish. Cromwell subdued Ireland with such brutality that his name has been associated there with curses to the present day.



In 1658 he died, probably of cancer and was buried in Westminster Abbey. Oliver Cromwell's body was dug up and his head was put on a pole on the roof of one of the buildings in Westminster for 24 years.

The restoration of monarchy

When Cromwell died, he was succeeded by his son Richard. But Richard Cromwell was a poor leader and could control neither the army, nor Parliament. He was a weak and mild man. Nobody governed the country. Cromwell, his system of government and the puritan ethics that went with it (theatres and other forms of amusement had been banned) had become so unpopular that it was clear that the situation could be saved only by the restoration of monarchy. In 1660 **Charles II**, the son of the executed king was asked to return to his kingdom (he had to escape to France) and take the throne. He was known as the **Merry Monarch**. His return marked the revival of entertainments discouraged by the Puritans. Theatres reopened, and hunting and gambling increased.

The London that Charles II returned to in 1660 was the largest city in Europe with 500,000 inhabitants. However, health and hygiene in the city had not improved since the time of the Black Death in the Middle Ages. This meant that any epidemic would spread rapidly. The Great Plague from 1664 to 1665, was an outbreak of bubonic plague in the southeast of England which killed 68, 596 people – almost 20 percent of London's population.

Charles II didn't have children but he had 14 illegitimate sons and daughters. The most popular of his sons was James, Duke of Monmouth, called the Protestant Duke. Monmouth was a capable soldier, who had commanded English troops during the Dutch War. When Charles II died, his brother James and the younger son of Charles I became king in 1685. Monmouth was defeated at the battle in Somerset and was executed for treason, and so were nearly 300 of his soldiers.

James II was the first Catholic monarch after Mary I. Arrogant, obstinate and a fervently religious, James failed to re-establish a Catholic dynasty. His reign ended in flight and exile. He fled

back to France, where he died in 1701. James II's obvious attempts to favour Catholics so angered the Protestants that Parliament invited the Dutch Protestant Prince, **William of Orange** to come and deliver the country from its unpopular ruler.

William III of Orange was married to Mary, the daughter of James II. William of Orange landed in Britain on November 5, 1688. He led a powerful fleet as a precaution but met with no resistance. William's peaceful invasion is known as **the Glorious Revolution**. Mary refused to accept the Crown unless Parliament also offered it to her husband. The

Parliament agreed and willingly offered William and Mary the Crown. They reigned for 14 years.



William defeated the forces of James II in Ireland at the battle of the Boyne in 1690. He is remembered by a group of Protestants in Northern Ireland who are opposed to Ireland becoming one republic, and called themselves Orangemen. This battle is still celebrated annually by the Protestant Orangemen of Ulster.

William and Mary ruled as joint monarchs. They were both Protestants and during their reign a number of Acts were passed which limited Royal power. The Protestant succession was also secured by the Act of Settlement of 1701 which barred Catholics from the British throne and also prevented any British monarch from marrying a Catholic.

Queen Ann, James II's Protestant daughter was the last of the House of Stuart. She became **Queen Ann I** in 1702, aged 37. Her life was full of great personal sadness and bad health. She had 17 children but all of them died in infancy or childhood. Her reign was dominated by the War of the Spanish Succession abroad and by rivalry between Whigs and Tories at home.

By the terms of the Act of Succession of 1701 the throne was to pass to the nearest Protestant heir, in the House of Hanover. Ann hated her German cousins and refused to allow them to come to England. But as her reign drew to an end she sent an envoy to the future George I, the great-grandson of James I.

THE HANOVERIANS

(1714 - 1837)

The Georgian Kings ruled Britain for 123 years, presiding over the growth and loss of one empire (America) and, through exploration and trade around the world, the beginning of another. They ruled through two revolutions in America and France, which shook the established order and laid the foundations of the modern world. Britain itself underwent two other revolutions. The first was the Agricultural Revolution, which saw improved methods of growing crops and the invention of new farm equipment. Next came the Industrial Revolution, which saw the invention of steam-powered machines.



passed to Sophia's son George.

The Georgian kings were descended from James I's daughter Elizabeth. Her daughter Sophia married the Elector of Hanover. It meant that he was not only the King of Hanover but also one of the nine German princes who had the right to elect the emperor. She was recognized as Queen Ann's heir when Ann outlived all of her 17 children, but Sophia died a few months before, so the throne

George I was 55 years old when he became King of England. He arrived from Hanover in Germany speaking no English, with two mistresses, two Turkish servants and several German advisers. A shy man he proved to be a shrewd ruler.



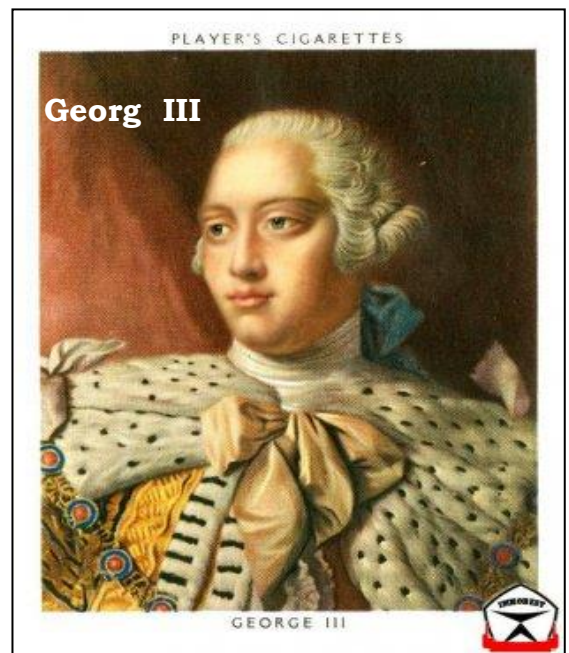
George came to the British throne with very little knowledge about his new kingdom. He and his ministers conversed in French. He never became accustomed to England and remained isolated as he surrounded himself for most of his reign with fellow Germans. He didn't get involved in British politics, leaving most decisions to the Cabinet, which became much more important during his time as king.

Only in his later years did George begin to rely increasingly on the First Lord of the Treasury, Robert Walpole, who is regarded as Britain's first prime minister.

The only son of George I **George II** succeeded his father in 1727 but, unlike his father, George could speak English. Like his father he wasn't very interested in the government of Britain, allowing the development of the constitutional monarchy. He was, however, interested in the army. George has been a soldier all his life, serving under the Duke of Marlborough at the battle in 1708 when Britain was dragged into a series of European wars. At the age of 60 he commanded the English and Hanoverian forces that won the battle in 1743 in the War of the Austrian Succession. George II was the last English monarch to appear on a battlefield. George II's reign also saw the end of the Jacobite Rebellions and the start of the Seven Years War.

George III, the grandson of King George II, was very interested in the government of Britain and worked closely with prime ministers. He was strongly opposed to American independence, and was blamed by the public for losing the war of the American Revolution.

He was very interested in farming, and he particularly liked his nickname, **Farmer George**. He also took an interest in science and championed John Harrison's invention of the chronometer, which in turn enabled Captain Cook to make his voyages from 1768 to 1779.



George had been a simple, kindly man. He had provided a moral example to his subjects through his virtuous way of life.

He suffered from illness for some periods of his life and in 1811 he became so mentally ill that his son was made Prince Regent.

George IV was a complete contrast to his father. He was clever, generous, a patron of the arts and a good linguist. But he was also vain, a drunkard, a gambler and lazy, and faithless to his friends and his many mistresses. His conduct disgusted even his close friends.

As the third son of George III, **William IV** was not expected to become king and was not trained for the monarchy. Instead he began an early career in the navy as a midshipman at the age of 13, and later became a Rear Admiral and because of this he was known as **the Sailor King**.

He was blunt, tactless and nicknamed Silly Billy. But as king he worked hard and his common sense ultimately led him to support the Great Reform Bill of 1832.

THE SAXE-COBURGS

(1837 - 1913)

The period from the accession of Queen Victoria to the outbreak of World War I has been called the Age of Empire. The British Empire reached its greatest extent, covering one-fifth of the world's land area, and containing one-quarter of the world's population. During this period there were two reigns and the beginning of a third: **Queen Victoria** (1837-1901) was the last of the Hanoverian line which had started with George I. After her came **Edward VII** of Saxe-Coburg (1901-1910); this period is called the Edwardian era. **George V** was the last of the Saxe-Coburgs and the first of the House of Windsor.

The Victorian age witnessed great progress in medicine and public health, which helped to improve the lives of working people in the industrial cities. Social evils such as child labour in mines and factories were also abolished. More adults had the right to vote, though women were still excluded.



Britain was not the only country to build an empire in the 19th century. France, Germany and Italy all gained territories, and Austria and Hungary had united to form the Habsburg Empire. The German Reich, which means empire, was formed in 1871 when the German states of Europe, except Austria, were united. The Russian empire expanded eastwards to the Pacific Ocean; at one time it even included Alaska, which the Russians sold to America.

Queen Victoria was the granddaughter of King George III and became queen after the death of King William IV. Her rule was the longest of any British king or queen.

Victoria was only 18 when she came to the throne and needed guidance from her first prime minister, Lord Melbourne. In 1840 she married her cousin Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha. They had nine children. After Albert's death Victoria took no further part in public affairs. This was a dangerous thing to do. Newspapers began to criticize her, and some people even doubted the value of the monarchy. Many radicals believed that as a result of developing democracy it was time for monarchy to die. But the Queen was persuaded to return by her Prime Minister Benjamin Disraeli and to take more interests in the life of the kingdom. She did so, and she soon became extraordinary popular. At the time when monarchy was losing its place as an integral part of the British governing system, Victoria managed to establish it as a respected and popular institution. She is also remembered as a bad-tempered old woman. However in her early life she was a happy and enthusiastic queen who was very popular with ordinary people. One important step back to popularity was the publication in 1868 of the Queen's book 'Our life in the Highlands'. The book was the Queen's own diary of her life with Prince Albert and her family in her castle in the Scottish Highlands. It delighted the public because they had never before known anything of the private life of the monarch, and they enjoyed reading about it.

Queen Victoria was also popular in Europe. She became known as 'the Grandmother of Europe' after marrying members of her family into many Royal Houses of Europe. Among her grandchildren were Emperor William II of Germany, and Alexandra, wife of Tsar Nicholas II of Russia.

Edward VII, the son of Queen Victoria was the Prince of Wales for most of his life, until he was



59 while his mother ruled. Queen Victoria wouldn't involve him in politics or give him any serious responsibilities. However, he did carry out many goodwill visits abroad. He became very fond of France even though Anglo-French relations were not that good. He influenced foreign affairs in an attempt to calm international tensions and to prevent the outbreak of a European war. The



French, who had been quite hostile, were won over by the charm of Edward VII during his state visit to Paris in 1903.

Edward ruled for nine years. The Edwardian era, under a genial and pleasure-loving king, was a much brighter and more glamorous time than the closing years of Victorian's reign. His reign was a period of peace and economic success before World War I.

George V's family name was Saxe-Coburg, which came from Prince Albert, his grandfather. For the first seven years of his reign George V kept this name. But with the outbreak of World War I against Germany, and with anti-German feeling running high, he changed his Germanic family name to **Windsor**. George was the second son of Edward VII (his elder brother died before him). He became king and Emperor of India at a time when Parliament was trying to limit the power of the House of Lords, and women were campaigning for the right to vote.

George V held old fashioned values and with his wife, Mary, kept the monarchy popular. But the power of British monarchs had declined so much in the 19th century that by the time of George V they were little more than figureheads.

His early education was somewhat insignificant as compared to his older brother Albert. George chose the career of professional naval officer and served competently until Albert died. He married Mary of Teck in 1893, who bore him four sons and one daughter.

Robert Lacey, his official biographer, describes George as such: "...King George V was distinguished by no exercise of social gifts, by no personal magnetism, by no intellectual powers. He was neither a wit nor a brilliant raconteur, neither well-read, nor well-educated, and he made no great contribution to enlightened social converse. He lacked intellectual curiosity and only late in life acquired some measure of artistic taste. He was, in other words, exactly like most of his subjects. He discovered a new job for modern kings and queens to do – **representation.**"

George V had started a tradition of attending the annual Football Cup Final match at Wembley Stadium. On Christmas Day, 1932, he spoke to the people of Britain and the Commonwealth to the radio. Since then the Christmas speech of the monarch has also become a tradition.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- grasp – власть, контроль
- distortion – искажение
- strife – борьба, раздор
- sprig – побег, веточка
- monetary – денежный
- fiscal – финансовый
- plead – представлять интересы
- to depose – свергнуть
- pious – набожный
- mail-clad – одетые в кольчугу
- formidable – грозный, чудовищный

-to curb – обуздать, усмирить
-dysentery – дизентерия
-to loathe – ненавидеть
-shrewd – сообразительный
-persecution – преследование, гонение
-shellfish – моллюск
-to dribble – пускать слюни
-to dissolve – распускать
-ethics – мораль
-precaution – предосторожность
-envoy – дипломатический представитель
-reconteur – рассказчик

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. The monarchy is the oldest secular institution in the United Kingdom? When did it begin?
2. Are there many dynasties of British Kings and Queens?
3. What English Kings and Queens of the 9-17 cc. do you know? What were they famous for?
4. Is it useful to know all the dynasties or only the most distinguished kings or queens? Why?
5. How do you think if the British are interested in their history and life of their monarchs?
6. How many dynasties of British Kings and Queens of the 18 – 20 cc. do you know?
7. Have you ever heard anything about Queen Victoria? George I? George IV? Edward VII?
8. What did English Kings and Queens of this period do for their country?
9. 10. Why did the British monarchy survived?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. Генриха VIII был третьим ребёнком Генриха VII и Елизаветы Йоркской. Его отец Генрих VII готовил сына к принятию духовного сана.
2. В 1509 году, после смерти Генриха VII, Генрих VIII стал королём в возрасте 17 лет. Деспотизм этого короля, как в государственной, так и в личной жизни не знал никаких границ. Во второй половине своего царствования король Генрих перешел к наиболее жестоким и тираническим формам правления. Увеличилось число казнённых политических противников короля. Число казнённых в царствование короля Генриха достигло 72 000 человек.
3. В последние годы своей жизни Генрих начал страдать ожирением, поэтому король мог передвигаться только при помощи особых механизмов. К концу жизни тело Генриха было покрыто болезненными опухолями.

4. Одновременно Генрих VIII изменил свой стиль питания и стал в основном употреблять огромные количества жирного красного мяса, сократив количество овощей в своем рационе. Считается, что эти факторы спровоцировали скорую смерть короля. Он умер в возрасте 55 лет.
5. Время правления Елизаветы иногда называют «золотым веком Англии» в связи с расцветом культуры и с возросшим значением Англии на мировой арене.
6. Елизавета I с вниманием относилась к моде и впервые в мире в 1566 году появилась на официальном мероприятии в Оксфорде с перчатками, удлиненными до локтя.
7. Взаимоотношения елизаветинской Англии с Русским Царством достаточно полно характеризуются двумя аспектами: деятельностью Московской торговой компании и личной перепиской Елизаветы с Иваном Грозным.
8. Царь Иван Грозный предлагал вступить с Елизаветой в брак и надеялся на предоставление политического убежища на случай смуты или иного непредвиденного обстоятельства. Елизавета ответила отказом на брачное предложение.
9. У Королевы Виктории и её мужа Альберта было 9 детей и 42 внука. Младший сын Виктории Леопольд болел гемофилией. Среди потомков Виктории, страдавших от гемофилии, её правнук российский царевич Алексей.
10. Места и памятники, посвящённые королеве Виктории, есть по всему миру, особенно в странах Содружества. В честь Виктории названы, в частности, столица Сейшельских островов, самое большое озеро Африки, водопад Виктория, столица Британской Колумбии (Виктория), а также два штата Австралии (Виктория и Квинсленд). В честь Виктории также названа самая крупная в мире кувшинка — виктория амазонская (виктория-регия), найденная в Британской Гвиане немецким ботаником на английской службе Р. Г. Шомбургом.
11. В 1856 году появился крест Виктории, которым награждались отличившиеся в Крымской войне. Орден остаётся высшей военной наградой в Великобритании, Канаде, Австралии и Новой Зеландии.
12. День Виктории - государственный праздник в Канаде и праздничный день в некоторых районах Шотландии, который отмечают 24 мая (день рождения Виктории).

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it,

Lesson 3

MODERN BRITAIN

THE WINDSORS

(1914 - present)

World War I is often seen as a dividing line between British prosperity and decline. By 1914



Britain was already losing its pre-eminence in its navy and industry, and the monarchy and the House of Lords had little authority. Workers were also becoming steadily better organized, and strikes were to become frequent.

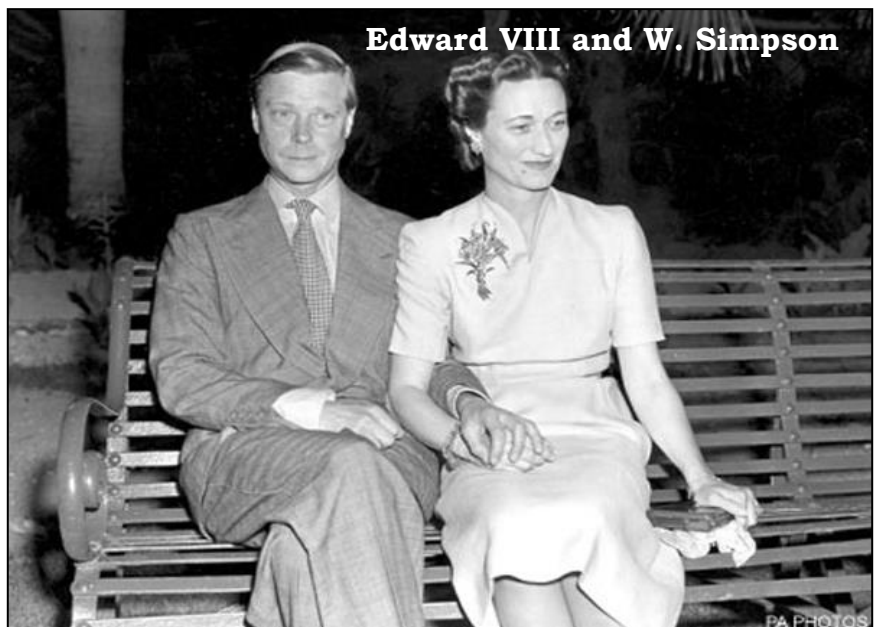
After World War II (1939-1945),

Britain quickly lost her empire; the

countries belonging to it were almost all independent by 1970. They remained linked in the Commonwealth of Nations. In the modern world, it has become apparent that a small country can no longer stand alone. So Britain has become a member of other organizations: the United Nations, the North Atlantic Treaty Organization and the European Union which provide support for trade and defence.

George V was a traditionalist, earnestly trying to do his best for the country, and he had been deeply respected. His son's accession brought problems. He died the year after his silver jubilee after a series of attacks of bronchitis, on January 20, 1936.

When George V died, his eldest son, **Edward VIII**, was 41 and unmarried. As Prince of Wales he had acquired great personal popularity, both at home and in the empire. Edward was aware of the social problems of the time, and had made public remarks about both slums and unemployment which earned widespread approval. He had his definite views on domestic and foreign policy, however, the government saw this as political meddling. More over, he lost his heart at a critical moment to an American divorcee, **Mrs Wallis Simpson**. It was the talk of the world's press. The Prime Minister



spoke to the King about Mrs Simpson. Edward declared that he wanted to marry her, and proposed a morganatic marriage, a marriage in which Mrs Simpson would be his wife but not his queen. The government, the Churches, the leaders of the Commonwealth and probably majority opinion in the country opposed a royal marriage that would make Mrs Simpson a queen. For the last 2 centuries the public have wanted their monarch to have high moral standards.

Edward chose to abdicate the throne in 1936 and married Mrs Simpson in 1937. After their marriage they lived mainly in France. He abdicated in favour of his brother who became **King George VI**, giving Edward the title of **Duke of Windsor**.³ Edward gave Royal Assent to His Majesty's Declaration of Abdication Act, by which Edward VIII and any children he might have were excluded from succession to the throne.

During the Second World War, the Duke of Windsor escaped from Paris to Lisbon in 1940. Then he was appointed Governor of the **Bahamas**,⁴ a position he held until 1945.

In spite of the constitutional crisis that he caused, the Duke of Windsor (as Edward later became) and his wife were popular celebrities in Britain all their lives. The king's abdication has been an example of the power of love.

He lived abroad until the end of his life, dying in 1972 in Paris (but he was buried in Windsor).

Edward was never crowned. His reign lasted 325 days. As Prince of Wales, Edward VIII (reigned January-December 1936) had successfully carried out a number of regional visits and other official engagements. These visits and his official tours overseas had made him popular. The first monarch to be a qualified pilot, Edward created the **King's Flight** (now known as **The Royal Squadron**) in 1936 to provide air transport for the Royal family's official duties.

George VI was the second son of George V Albert, Duke of York who took the title of George VI

in 1936 and became king after the abdication of his brother Edward VIII. He was the last British king to be called "**emperor**" and the first Head of the Commonwealth of Nations. King George VI was the father of the present Queen.

George was a quiet, shy man who greatly admired his brother Edward. From childhood to the age of thirty, George suffered with a bad stammer in his speech, that's why he didn't like to be in public. An Australian speech therapist

was instrumental in helping George to overcome the speech defect.

In 1923 George married Lady Elizabeth Bowes-Lyon, who was known as Queen Mother, bore him two daughters, **Elizabeth** and **Margaret**. George was a good husband and father and spent much



time with his family. George VI and his queen Elizabeth together gained the respect and affection of the people. He had an extremely difficult reign, during which he took upon himself the task of maintaining the morale of the British people throughout World War II. George, following in his father's footsteps, visited troops, munitions factories, supply docks and bomb damaged areas to support the war effort. As the Nazis bombed London, the Royal family remained at Buckingham Palace; George VI went so far as to practice firing his revolver, vowing that he would defend Buckingham to the death. Fortunately, such defense was never necessary. The actions of the King and Queen during the war years greatly added to the prestige of the monarchy. His devotion to duty in the war helped him to re-establish the reputation of the monarchy after the problems caused by the abdication crisis.

In the context of royal history, George VI was one of only five monarchs who succeeded the throne in the lifetime of his predecessor: Henry IV, Edward IV, Richard III, and William III were the other four. George wrote to Prime Minister Stanley Baldwin concerning the state of the monarchy: *"I am new to the job but I hope that time will be allowed to me to make amends for what has happened."* His brother Edward continued to advise George on matters of the day, but such advice was a hindrance, as it was contradictory to policies pursued by George's ministers. The "...slim, quiet man with tired eyes" (as described by Logue) had a troubled reign, but he did much to leave the monarchy in better condition than he found it.

He died from cancer on February 6, 1952.

Elizabeth II, born April 21, 1926, was the eldest daughter of George VI and Elizabeth Bowes-Lyon. She was born in London. Five weeks later she was christened Elizabeth Alexandra Mary in the chapel at Buckingham Palace.

Elizabeth's parents liked a modern manner of bringing up their daughter. It was decided that the



Princess's life was to be as normal as possible. Even as a child, Princess Elizabeth understood the full significance of the role into which she had been born. At the age of 12, having already distinguished

herself as a gifted and eager horsewoman, Princess confided to her teacher that, had she not been born to

be Queen, she would “like to be a lady living in the country with lots of horses and dogs.” Soon she wanted to discover all she could about the matters that would one day form the basis of her ruling life. She began to attend lessons in constitutional history at Eton College, one of England’s most illustrious and intellectually demanding public schools. Soon her love to History led her to broaden her education in order to take in the history of Europe.

In 1933 Hitler’s National Socialist Party was in power. In 1939 in September the Second World War came to Western Europe. Princess Elizabeth decided it was time to show that she was ready to assume the full weight of her Royal responsibilities. She became patron of organizations whose work she valued. She was President of charities “The Queen Elizabeth Hospital for Children” in Hackney, east London. At the age of 18, in 1944, when during the King’s absence on a tour of the Italian battlefields, she performed many of the official duties of Head of State.

In 1947 Princess Elizabeth made her first official overseas visit to South Africa. The Princess’s role in service demonstrated that Elizabeth was now a mature and natural leader. Furthermore, the public was informed of her engagement to Lieutenant **Philip Mountbatten**, son of Prince Andrew of Greece and great-great-grandson of Queen Victoria. The couple had known each other for many years and Prince Philip was most popular match for Elizabeth in the eyes of the British public. The British press conceded that this was “ clearly a match of choice not arrangement.”

They married on November 20, 1947 in Westminster Abbey. They have 4 children. In 1948 on the 14-th of November Princess Elizabeth gave birth to **Prince Charles**, the Prince of Wales, who was the perfect likeness of George V, his great grandfather. 2 years later, a sister for the Prince, **Princess Anne**, was born.

The Princess Elizabeth was crowned on the 2-nd of June , 1953 in Westminster Abbey as “ Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God , of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith.” She was only 25 when she became a queen.

In 1960 **Prince Andrew**, the Duke of York, was born. In 1964 **Prince Edward** was born.

Elizabeth II reigned for 70 years. In 1 000 years of English history only four monarchs enjoyed a long reign but Elizabeth II had the longest reign. They are Edward III, Henry III and Queen Victoria. Elizabeth managed to maintain a division between her public and private life. She was the first monarch to send her children to boarding schools in order to remove them from the ever-probing media. She had a strong sense of duty and diligence and dispatches her queenly business with great candor, efficiency and dignity. Churchill, who had served four monarchs, was impressed and delighted by her knowledge and wit. She possessed a sense of humour rarely exhibited in public where a dignified presence was her goal.

Elizabeth, like her father before her, raised the character of the monarchy through her actions. Unfortunately, the actions of her children tarnished the royal name. But her exceptionally long reign provided a bright spot in the life of her country.

Elizabeth II was a very popular monarch. If there were not monarchy 80% of the British would vote for her as President. She died on the 8th of September in 2022.

King Charles III

The Prince of Wales, eldest son of Queen Elizabeth II and Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh in 2022 became the next British king Charles III.

The King was born at Buckingham Palace on 14 November 1948, and was christened **Charles Philip Arthur George**. When, on the accession of Queen Elizabeth in 1952, Prince Charles automatically became **Duke of Cornwall** under a charter of King Edward III dating back to 1337, which gave the title to the Sovereign's eldest son. He also became **Prince and Great Steward of Scotland**.

The Prince was created Prince of Wales in 1958. In 1965, at 17 he was sent to school in Australia. He was not going there for his own pleasure but because he was the heir to the throne and should have some experience of the Commonwealth. He enjoyed his stay there. In 1969, at the age of 21, he was presented to the Welsh people at the Caernarvon Castle to become Prince of Wales. In 1971 he entered the Royal Air Force College. Then he entered the Royal Navy and served until 1976. He flew helicopters and commanded a ship. Prince Charles is the founder of two charitable organizations.

Prince Charles, aged 33 married 19-year-old Lady Diana Spenser on July 29, 1981, who became Diana, Princess of Wales. They have two children **William** (1982) and **Harry** (1984). A quarrel over the children in 1992 finally broke the marriage. Charles wanted his family to join him for a shooting party. Disapproving of the killing of the animals, Diana backed out, proposing that she and the boys go to stay with the Queen. That was when Charles' patience snapped and he asked for a separation. The marriage ended in divorce in 1996. **Princess Diana** crashed in an accident in a tunnel under the Alma Bridge in Paris on August 31, 1997.

On April 9, 2005, he married **Camilla Parker Bowles** (born 1947), with whom he had a long-standing relationship; after the wedding, Parker Bowles took the title of duchess of Cornwall.

King Charles III has been the United Kingdom's monarch since September 8, 2022, following the death of his mother Queen Elizabeth II. He was crowned during his coronation on May 6, 2023. Under public scrutiny his entire life as the oldest child of Elizabeth and Prince Philip, Charles became Prince of Wales at age 9 and held the title for more than 60 years.

He was 73 and made history as the oldest person ever to assume the British throne. That day, he also became head of the Commonwealth of Nations, the 53-country association of Britain and its former

colonies that began in 1949. Elizabeth had nominated Charles to succeed her in the nonhereditary role in April 2018.

Charles' coronation took place on May 6, 2023, at Westminster Abbey. In a nod to his philanthropic interests, he invited more than 850 community and charity representatives to the ceremony. Before taking the throne, Charles had promised to have a multifaith coronation to respect the religious diversity and multicultural nature of the modern United Kingdom. He held true to this by including a preface to the coronation oath that the Anglican church "will seek to foster an environment where people of all faiths and beliefs may live freely."

During the ceremony, Charles pledged to serve the country. He also vowed to protect the Protestant religion and preserve the Church of England, as required by the official coronation oath. At the moment of coronation, the Archbishop of Canterbury placed St. Edward's Crown, a bejeweled and solid gold creation weighing nearly five pounds, on Charles' head. This coronation crown was last worn during his mother's 1953 coronation and won't be used again until it's placed on the head of the next sovereign. Charles used the lighter Imperial State Crown afterward, which his mother and his grandfather also wore during their coronations.

King Charles III has 5 grandchildren from his sons. He conferred the title prince of Wales upon his eldest son, William. Among his many philanthropic and environmental endeavors are the King's Trust and the King's Foundation. King Charles III is well known for his interest in architecture, in particular his dislike of modern architecture, and his concern for the environment. He is also a keen painter and has published several books, including the 1980 children's story *The Old Man of Lochnagar*, 2010's *Harmony: A New Way of Looking at Our World*, and 2012's *The Prince's Speech: On the Future of Food*.

Charles' real estate portfolio includes 56 holiday cottages, 12 homes, 10 castles, and seven palaces, according to *Forbes*. He directly owns two properties inherited from his mother: Balmoral Castle, worth about \$100 million, and the Sandringham estate, worth approximately \$315 million.

HRH Princess Royal

Princess Anne

The Princess Royal, King's sister and the second child and only daughter of the Queen and the Duke of Edinburgh, was born in London on 15 August 1950. She was baptized Anne Elizabeth Alice Louise at Buckingham Palace.

She received the title Princess Royal from the Queen in June 1987; she was previously known as Princess Anne.

Like her mother and father Anne has a passion for horses. Princess Anne was the **Champion of Europe** in horseracing. She is the first of the Royal family to become the European champion (1971).

On November 14, 1973 Princess Ann got married captain Mark Phillips. They have son Peter and daughter Zara. In 1992 she divorced Mark Phillips and married a Royal Navy Officer Timothy Laurence.

She is the **Counselor of London University and President of the Fund of Salvation of Children**. In 1983 Princess Royal became **President of the British Olympic Committee**. In 1994 the Queen appointed the Princess a Lady of the Most Noble **Order of the Garter**. In 2000, to mark her 50th birthday, the Princess Royal was appointed to **the Order of the Thistle**, in recognition of her work for charities.

HRH The Duke of York

Prince Andrew

Prince Andrew, King's brother, is the second son and the third child of the Queen and the Duke of Edinburgh. The Duke of York was born on 19 February 1960 at Buckingham Palace. He was the first child to be born to a reigning monarch. Named Andrew Albert Christian Edward he was known as Prince Andrew until his marriage, when he was created the Duke of York.

He was educated in Gordonstoun in Scotland, a college in Ontario, Canada, and **the Royal Naval College**, Dartmouth. He became a helicopter pilot in the Royal Navy and took part in the Falklands War. In 1986 he married Sara Ferguson, and she became the Duchess of York. They have two daughters. In 1996 the Duke and the Duchess divorced.

HRH The Earl of Wessex

Prince Edward

The Earl of Wessex, King's brother, is the third son and youngest child of the Queen and the Duke of Edinburgh. He was born on 10 March 1964 and christened Edward Antony Richard Louis at Buckingham Palace.

He was educated at Gordonstoun in Scotland and at Cambridge University, where he studied history. He joined the Royal Marines in 1986, but left the next year to begin a career producing plays for the theatre and films for television.



In March 1989, the Queen appointed Prince Edward a **Commander of the Royal Victorian Order**.

He was known as Prince Edward until his marriage, when he was created the Earl of Wessex and Viscount Severn; at the same time it was announced that His Royal Highness will eventually succeed to the title of the Duke of Edinburgh. He married in 1999 Sophie Rhys-Jones, who became the Countess of Wessex on her marriage. Their daughter, Lady Louise Windsor, was born in 2003.

Prince William of Wales

Prince William of Wales is the elder son of Princess Diana and King Charles III and is the heir apparent to the British throne.

Life started very well for Wills (as the press sometimes called him). His birth was an occasion of national rejoicing. Charles was crazy about him. Diana and Charles were at their best as parents. Diana dressed the boys in baseball caps and jeans; Charles – proper jackets, ties and well-polished shoes.

The boy's leisure life followed two different tracks. With Charles it was off to one of the family estates for hunting. Like his father Wills is an enthusiastic shot. With Diana it was off on a grand trip in the Caribbean, Colorado or a tour of Disney World.



By the time he was 8 he had calmed down. He also showed self-possession. With his great-grandmother he was a model little gentleman, helping to guide her down church steps and holding the umbrella over her head.

At Eton, William occupied a single room at Manor House, a residence housing 50 students. Eton is close to Windsor, and William very frequently had tea with the Queen by himself on Sundays at 4 p.m. A car was sent for him. And they spent a couple of hours together. What did they talk about? Duties. And she came to visit him at school. His grandfather Prince Philip takes him on duck shooting expeditions, where they discuss family matters. Diana's family has minimal influence.

Eton is famous for its blue bloods and for the statesmen and men of letters it has turned out. The students there acquire an elegance and gloss. William had that look already.

Will's day at Eaton was a strict drill. Up at 8, chapel after breakfast, classes all morning, and afternoon classes start at four.

After Eaton William entered Cambridge University, as his father did. Diana wanted him to go to Harvard.

William shares the royals' love of horses. He likes computer games, fast food, techno music and "modern" clothes that he buys himself. He loves to read, particularly action-adventure fiction and nonfiction; he also likes action movies. He'd like to go on an African safari. He dislikes glare of the public spotlight and the adulation of teenage girls. Web has more than 20 pages in the prince's honour. In Vancouver with Charles, William was besieged by frenzied girls proposing marriage. He replaced his mother as a royal star. Once he received 100 Valentine's cards. By his female contemporaries Wills is rated as "snoggable." Wills is as tall as Diana was, and like his mother, he seems to have the best of

Spencer good looks Wills will have a powerful role in shaping the monarchy in the coming century. Buckingham Palace begins to make use of him. He cannot afford to stumble. The burdens are enormous.



He must be that stable leader who is so badly needed to strengthen a besieged but valuable institution of the British monarchy. At the age of 21, Prince William was appointed as a Counsellor of State, and began his royal duties by first serving in that capacity when the

Queen was abroad to attend the Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting 2003, in Nigeria. For his 21st birthday, William also accompanied his father on a royal tour of Wales, where they visited the Anglesey Food Fair and opened a centre for the homeless in Newport. By July 2005, he was on his first overseas tour, traveling to New Zealand on behalf of his grandmother in her role as Monarch of New Zealand, to participate in World War II commemorations, and, for the 30th anniversary of his father's charity.

On 23 January 2009 it emerged that Prince William has written the foreword to a book for the first time. The cover of *Home from War* – the autobiography of a soldier from the prince's regiment who was seriously wounded in a Taliban ambush – notes the Prince's contribution.

Through his maternal grandfather, Prince William is descended from Henry IV of England, Charles II of England and James II of England. Should he become king, William will be the first monarch since Anne of Great Britain to be descended from Charles I of England. Through his mother, William is of English people descent and of remote Irish people and Scotland descent. Through the Spencer family he is also distantly related to several American presidents and British prime ministers.

On 29 April 2011 the wedding of Prince William, Duke of Cambridge, and Catherine Middleton took place. Catherine (Kate) Middleton is the eldest of three children of Michael and Carole Middleton of Bucklebury, Berkshire.

Prince William and Kate Middleton met in 2001, when both were studying at the University of St Andrews. After graduating Kate worked in retail and then as an accessories buyer photographer at her parents' business. She is primarily of English descent, but with a few distant Scottish and French ancestors. Her mother's maternal family were working-class labourers and miners.

William and Kate were engaged in October 2010 when Prince gave Kate the same engagement ring that his father had given to William's mother. The Prince of Wales and Queen Elizabeth were absolutely delighted for the couple.

This occasion attracted much media attention, especially about Kate's status as a commoner (i.e. not a part of the aristocracy) marrying into royalty.

The day of the wedding was a public holiday in the UK and featured many ceremonial aspects, including use of the state carriages and roles for the Foot Guards and Household Cavalry. The best man of Prince William, with royal tradition, was his brother Prince Harry, while the bride chose her sister Pippa. As William had been appointed colonel of the Irish Guards on 10 February 2011, he chose this uniform for his wedding. As a Knight of the Order of the Garter he wore the order Blue ribboned. Prince Harry wore the uniform of a captain of the Blues and Royals.

The Wedding Ring of Kate is made from Welsh gold. Since 1923, it has been a tradition in the Royal Family to use Welsh gold for the wedding ring of the bride, because the gold was mined in the mountains of North Wales.

Upon her marriage, Kate Middleton became her Royal Highness the Duchess of Cambridge.

The wedding was widely broadcast on television, internet, and radio in up to 180 countries. In the USA, the Empire State Building in New York City was lit in red, white and blue, the colours of the Union Flag at sunset on 29 April to mark the wedding.

The couple has three children: Prince George, Princess Charlotte, and Prince Louis.

As a working royal, William's official duties include hosting receptions and traveling overseas on behalf of the government. Along with his wife, William visited several Caribbean nations in the spring of 2022. The trip was less successful than expected: A protest in Belize changed the royal itinerary, and the Jamaican prime minister said he no longer wanted the king to be the country's head of state. However, people were happy to see the royal couple at other stops on the trip.

Like many other members of the British royal family, William has used his wealth and influence as a philanthropist. In 2005, he became patron to Centrepont, an organization for homeless youth, and the Tusk Trust, which is dedicated to the preservation of African wildlife.

In late 2019, William announced plans for the prize to be awarded every year, over the course of a decade, to five recipients who present the best solutions to the planet's pressing problems. The five categories are nature protection, clean air, ocean revival, waste elimination, and climate change. The first prizes were awarded in 2021.

Prince Harry, duke of Sussex

Prince Harry is the younger son of the Prince of Wales and the late Diana, Princess of Wales.

Prince Henry Charles Albert David (always known as Prince Harry) was born on 15 September 1984 at St Mary's Hospital, Paddington. He was christened by the Archbishop of Canterbury in December 1984 in St George's Chapel, Windsor.

Prince Harry attended the same schools as his brother, Prince William. He started at Mrs Jane Mynors' nursery school in London from September 1987, when he was three.

In 1989 Prince Harry joined Prince William at Wetherby School, moving to Ludgrove School in Berkshire in September 1992.



Like Prince William, Prince Harry attended the commemorations in London in 1995. In November 1997 he accompanied the Prince of Wales to South Africa, where he was able to go on safari before joining his father at a concert featuring the Spice Girls and meeting President Nelson Mandela.

In 1998 both young Princes were with the Prince of Wales in Canada, for brief public appearances and a skiing holiday in Whistler, British Columbia. Like his brother, Prince Harry is a keen skier.

In September 1998 Prince Harry started at Eton College, Windsor.

On 2 January 2000, Prince William and Prince Harry accompanied the Prince of Wales on a visit to Cardiff. They heard rap music and dance as well as hymns and readings in Welsh and English at the Tabernacl and joined 60,000 people for a special edition of the BBC's Songs of Praise at the Millennium Stadium.

Prince Harry celebrated his 18th birthday on 15 September 2002. To mark the occasion, Her Majesty the Queen gave the Prince his own unique Coat of Arms.

In 2003 Prince Harry left school at Eton College with A Levels in Art and Geography.

Prince Harry then left Britain to spend the first part of his gap year in Australia, followed by a stay in Africa, where he worked in an orphanage in Lesotho.

Upon his return from Africa in July 2004, Prince Harry began preparing for the Regular Commissions Board (RCB) exams, which he passed in September 2004.

On 6 July 2004 Prince Harry, Prince William and their father, the Prince of Wales, accompanied the Queen and the Duke of Edinburgh to the opening of the Diana, Princess of Wales Memorial Fountain in Hyde Park, London.

In May 2005 Prince Harry entered Royal Military Academy Sandhurst to begin his training as an officer in the Army.

On 12 April 2006 Prince Harry was commissioned as an army officer. His grandmother, the Queen, was the Reviewing Officer at the Passing Out Parade at Sandhurst. Prince Harry joined the Household Cavalry, and served in Afghanistan for more than two months from the end of 2007 to early 2008. He is now training to be a helicopter pilot with the Army Air Corps. Although he is focusing on his military career, Prince Harry is Patron to a number of charities whose work he wants to support and Joint Founder and Patron of Sentebale, which helps children orphaned by AIDS in the poverty-stricken Lesotho in Southern Africa.

In May 2018 Harry married Meghan Markle—a divorced American actress, daughter of an African American mother and a white father—whose informal approachability and irrepressible personal warmth were reminiscent of the much beloved Diana, remembered as the “People’s Princess.” The ceremony was held in the medieval St. George’s Chapel at Windsor Castle but was unlike any previous royal wedding. Traditional British pomp and circumstance mixed with elements of African American culture, including the singing of the rhythm-and-blues classic “Stand by Me” by a gospel choir and an impassioned sermon in the tradition of the Black church about the redemptive power of love, delivered by Michael Bruce Curry, the first African American presiding bishop and primate of the Episcopal Church.

The couple, whose union reflected the changing social landscape of an increasingly multicultural Britain, seemed determined to modernize the monarchy and to connect it with the lives of everyday Britons. The guests inside the chapel included members of the British aristocracy, icons of British popular culture (Sir Elton John, David Beckham), and American entertainment royalty (Oprah Winfrey, George Clooney, and Serena Williams), but the couple also had invited some 1,200 individuals who had worked as volunteers for charitable organizations to occupy “ringside seats” on the grass outside St. George’s.

On May 6, 2019, Harry and Meghan had their first child, a boy named Archie Harrison Mountbatten-Windsor; at the time, the baby was seventh in line to the throne. The birth came as the couple faced various difficulties. Although they were initially embraced by the press, their desire for privacy resulted in negative media coverage. In addition, there appeared to be growing tensions between the couple and other royals. In January 2020 Harry and Meghan announced that they would “step back” from their royal duties and become “financially independent.” In addition, they planned to divide their time between the United Kingdom and North America. Following negotiations with the palace, it was announced that Harry and Meghan would “no longer [be] working members of the Royal Family” and

that they would not use their HRH titles. The changes took effect on March 31, 2020. The following year the couple confirmed that they would not return as working members of the royal family, which meant that Harry gave up his honorary military appointments as well as royal patronages. On June 4, 2021, Harry and Meghan had a daughter, Lilibet (“Lili”) Diana Mountbatten-Windsor; the name honoured both Harry’s mother and his grandmother, Elizabeth II, whose nickname was “Lilibet.”

In September 2022 Elizabeth died, and Harry and his wife were present at various memorial services, including the funeral. In early 2023 he released the highly anticipated memoir *Spare*. The candid book—along with a series of high-profile interviews—created a media frenzy. Harry provided details of his strained relationships with his father and brother, notably alleging that William had physically assaulted him. In addition, Harry revealed how he learned of his mother’s death and that for a long time he thought she was still alive.

Facts About Prince Harry

Prince Harry is known to have a mischievous sense of humor and has been caught pulling pranks on his family members and friends.

He is passionate about charitable work and has founded the Invictus Games, a sporting event for wounded, injured, and sick service personnel.

He is a huge fan of sports, particularly rugby, and has been seen attending matches and sporting events around the world.

Prince Harry is a dedicated conservationist and has worked on various initiatives to protect endangered species and their habitats.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- preeminence – превосходство
- meddling – вмешательство
- to abdicate the throne – отречься от трона
- to confide – доверять что-либо кому-либо
- bereavement – тяжёлая утрата
- roving – странствующий, кочующий
- to snap – треснуть
- recipient – получатель
- rejoicing – веселье, ликование
- self-possession – самоликование
- gloss – внешний лоск
- adulation – лесть
- burden – ноша, груз
- stumble – оступиться

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. How is the modern dynasty called? Why?
2. Who are the main representatives of the modern dynasty?
3. How did George VI become the king?
4. Did Elizabeth II want to be the queen? Was she ready to be the queen?
5. Characterize the members of her family?
6. What happened to Princess Diana?
7. Are there any problems in modern royal family?
8. Who will be the next British monarch?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. 10 февраля 2011 года принц Уильям был назначен полковником ирландской гвардии, поэтому на свадьбу он предпочёл надеть полную парадную форму этого полка. Как на рыцаре Ордена Подвязки, на нём была синяя лента Ордена, к которой были прикреплены его крылышки Королевских ВВС и Золотая юбилейная медаль.
 2. Следует отметить символизм наряда невесты. И использованные кружевные аппликации на платье являются символами четырёх провинций Соединённого Королевства: английские розы, шотландский чертополох, уэльские нарциссы и ирландский клевер.
 3. Стоимость свадьбы Уильяма и Кейт составила 20 миллионов фунтов стерлингов.
 4. В возрасте 17 лет принц Гарри завоевал в британских СМИ репутацию «шалого ребёнка» («wild child») — вследствие своих опытов с марихуаной и алкоголем.
 5. В январе 2005 года принц Гарри спровоцировал скандал значительного масштаба, появившись на костюмированной вечеринке в подобию формы Африканского корпуса Вермахта со свастикой на рукаве, за что был вынужден принести официальные извинения.
 6. Личные награды принца Гарри: Медаль Золотого юбилея королевы Елизаветы II (2002 год), Медаль «За участие в военной кампании в Афганистане» (2008 год), Медаль Бриллиантового юбилея королевы Елизаветы II (2012 год) и Медаль NATO ISAF.
- Воинские звания принца Гарри: 13 апреля 2008 — лейтенант Королевской конной гвардии, 16 апреля 2011 — капитан Армейского воздушного корпуса.
8. Отношения 64-летнего принца Уэльского Чарльза и его супруги, 66-летней герцогини Корнуольской Камиллы, серьезно испорчены борьбой за престол. Камилла в ярости: из-за «слабохарактерности» Чарльза ей не светит статус английской королевы! Герцогиня Корнуольская

потребовала \$350 в качестве отступных и гаранта ее молчания о причинах развода. Однако, Королева Елизавета II назвала требования невестки позорными и заявила, что та не получит никаких денег.

9. Что может вывести из себя Елизавету II? Вот список «раздражающих факторов» Ее Величества:

Картошка: ее никогда не подают к столу, когда королева обедает в одиночестве.

Супы: они оставляют коронованную особу совершенно равнодушной.

Дети за столом: за столом королевы нет места малышам, которые еще не научились хорошим манерам.

Костюмы-тройки: она считает, что подобные ансамбли стоит носить только прислуге.

Слово «беременность»: по мнению Ее Величества, данный термин слишком вульгарен. При ней следует говорить о женщине, ожидающей пополнения, «она в семейном положении».

Когда люди трогают ее собак: Елизавета, как известно, обожает своих псов породы корги и, как оказалось, терпеть не может, когда кто-то пытается их погладить.

Словари: хотите вывести из себя королеву — начните при ней решать кроссворд, обращаясь к помощи словаря. Она считает это «мошенничеством».

Шорты: мужчинам в шортах во дворце не место.

Расстроенные музыкальные инструменты: музыка, играющая для королевы, должна звучать гармонично.

Долгие проповеди: этот церковный ритуал не должен длиться дольше 12 минут.

Кубики льда: Елизавете не нравится стук, который они издают, поэтому в ее напитки кладут кусочки льда исключительно круглой формы.

«Ненастоящие» галстуки-бабочки: говорят, королева с расстояния шагов в 20 сможет определить, какая бабочка на мужчине — настоящая, которую нужно завязывать, или «фейковая» — на резинке (такую версию этого аксессуара Ее величество не одобряет).

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it,

Lesson 4

Royal Residences

Throughout the centuries, Britain's kings and queens have built or bought palaces to serve as family homes, workplaces and as centres of government.

The residences associated with today's Royal Family are divided into **the Occupied or Official Royal Residences**, which are held in trust for future generations, **Unoccupied Residences** and **the Private Estates** which have been handed down to the Queen by earlier generations of the Royal Family.

The official residences include **Buckingham Palace, Windsor Castle and the Palace of Holyroodhouse.**

The unoccupied residences include **Hampton Court Palace, Kensington Palace, Kew Palace, the Banqueting House, Whitehall and the Tower of London.**

The private homes of the King Charles III are **Sandringham House and Balmoral Castle.**

Beautifully furnished with treasures from the Royal Collection, most of the Royal residences are open to the public when not in official use.

Buckingham palace

Buckingham Palace is the official home of the British royal family in central London. It has served as the official London residence of Britain's Sovereigns since 1837. It is a very large house, originally built in 1703 for the Duke of Buckingham, though the part that can be seen from the road was built in 1913. Many tourists stand outside the Palace to watch the ceremony of Changing the Guard, and since 1993 parts of the house have been opened to the public in summer. The State Rooms are lavishly furnished with some of the greatest treasures from the Royal Collection – paintings by Rembrandt, Rubens, Poussin and so on; sculpture, exquisite examples of porcelain, and some of the finest English and French furniture in the world.

Buckingham Palace is neither very old nor very beautiful. Nothing very remarkable has happened there. Yet it is the most famous address in the world. It has been a home for seven generations of British kings and queens and is the symbol of the monarch. King George IV made it a palace. His father had spent £ 21 000 on an attractive red brick house, built for the Duke of Buckingham. George IV asked John Nash to rebuild the house. Nash and his King were both imaginative men, and many of the treasures to be seen now were acquired by George IV. The building cost a fortune and soon after the King's death, Nash was sacked.

When the King is here, the royal standard flutters over the palace. The Royal Mews house the coaches and horses used on all state occasions and are open to the public on Wednesday and Thursday. Here you can see the Gold State Coach and the glass coach used at royal weddings. There are about twenty Rolls Royces with the royal coat of arms. The King's Gallery, also in Buckingham Palace Road,

has special exhibitions from the Royal collection and may be visited every day except Monday. The Palace and the beautiful gardens which surround it occupy an area of 40 acres. There are 19 State Rooms in the Palace, 53 Royal and guest bedrooms, 188 staff rooms, 92 offices, 78 bathrooms and lavatories, and 600 rooms. In the State Dining Room there is a table for 60 guests. Keeping them spotless is the job of the 26 house-maids and the “daily ladies”. Inside a Palace are a Post Office, a police station and kitchens serving up to 600 meals a day. The Queen and Prince Philip have rooms on the first floor. The King works in the sitting room – cum – office. Every morning during breakfast bagpipes are played outside his private dining room.

Many tourists stand outside the Palace to watch the ceremony of Changing the Guard, and since 1993 parts of the house have been opened to the public in summer. The Ceremony of the Changing of the Guard that takes place daily at 11 o'clock in the morning, constitutes one of the pageants. It is an event that, in spite of its regularity, appears vested with that solemn classical ritual, of purely British flavour that confers on the protocol surrounding the monarchy of the United Kingdom an appearance which is nobly aristocratic, and yet lively and popular at the same time. It's something typically and intimately part of London's character.

The Victoria Memorial – is a large sculpture in front of Buckingham Palace. It was made in 1911 in memory of Queen Victoria and shows her sitting with several other figures under a gold statue representing Victory.

Windsor castle

Windsor Castle stands on a rock overlooking the River Thames in **Windsor**. It's one of the official homes of the British king or queen and the largest occupied castle in the world. A Royal palace and fortress for over 900 years, the Castle remains a working palace today. It was started by **William I** in the 11th century and was later fortified and enlarged by almost every monarch. William the Conqueror and his early successors needed to secure their military position. He put the Castle to guard the river crossing at Windsor.

Henry II built the massive **Round Tower**, and his grandson Henry III added some fortifications. Still later, the famous **St George's Chapel** was added by the kings Edward IV, Henry VII and Henry VIII. This Chapel is the burial place of ten sovereigns, and setting for many royal weddings. Charles II and later monarchs continued to make alterations to suit the needs and the fashions of the day.

Most of the present castle was either built or decorated in the early 19th century. Nowadays Windsor Castle is a comfortable country place within an hour's drive from the capital, where the Royal family can relax. Some of the rooms are open to the public when the king or queen is not staying there. In 1992 some parts of the castle were badly damaged by a fire, but these have now been repaired.

The Palace of Holyroodhouse

Founded as a monastery in 1128, the Palace of Holyroodhouse in Edinburgh is the King's official residence in Scotland. It was built for king Charles II in the 1670s. Situated at the end of the Royal Mile, the Palace is closely associated with Scotland's turbulent past, including Mary, Queen of Scots, who lived here between 1561 and 1567. Successive kings and queens have made the Palace the premier royal residence in Scotland. Today, the Palace is the setting for State ceremonies and official entertaining.

THE UNOCCUPIED RESIDENCES

The Tower of London

One of the oldest, best – known and most impressive places of interest in the city is the Tower of London which stands on the north bank of the Thames.

The Tower of London is London's oldest landmark. It consists of a group of structures built around the central White Tower in the 11th century. It was begun by **William the Conqueror** in 1108. The Tower of London served as a fortress, a palace, a zoo, a royal mint and a prison. Today it is a national monument and museum.

Many people have been locked in the Tower. In 1483 the boy-king Edward V and his brother, the Duke of York, were imprisoned and finally disappeared. English statesman and humanist scholar Sir Thomas More (1478-1535) was imprisoned in 1534 when he refused to conform to the Act of Supremacy. He was found guilty of treason and beheaded. He was canonized in 1935 as St. Thomas More.

Famous prisoners have included Anna Boleyn (1507-1536), the second wife of Henry VIII (1491-1547), Elizabeth I (1533-1603), when a Princess and Sir Walter Raleigh (1552-1618), the favourite of Elizabeth I. Spies were imprisoned here during the wars.

Some prisoners could live in comfortable rooms and receive visitors. Others were locked in freezing cells and tortured. There have been successful escapes from the Tower. The first to escape in 1101 was Ranulf Flambard. He climbed down using a rope, which had been smuggled to him inside a wine barrel. Many prisoners were publicly executed on Tower Hill, and privately on Tower Green. In the Tower Armory there is a block and axe used for a beheading in 1747.

In 1671 an attempt was made to steal the Crown Jewels by Captain Blood who was later pardoned by Charles II. Some think the King organized the raid to raise money.

The Crown Jewels are kept in the Jewell House at the Tower. The collection includes Saint Edward's Crown, used for the coronation ceremony, the Imperial State Crown, containing 3000 jewels, and the biggest cut diamond in the world, the "Star of Africa".

The Beefeaters guard the Tower. They used to be the monarch's private bodyguard. "Beefeater" was a nickname for well-fed servants. They wear a Tudor-style uniform of blue or red.

The Tower of London includes some towers. **The White Tower**, the keep of the Tower of London, stands as an outstanding example of Norman Military architecture. It was begun in 1078, and built partly of Caen stone imported from France. The White Tower has three small square towers and one round one, called Maud's Tower after a lady imprisoned there in the 1200's. On display there are four suits of Henry VIII.

In **the Bloody Tower** 13-year old Edward V (1470-1483) and his brother Richard were imprisoned. Protector of Edward V, his Uncle Richard (1452-1485) became King Richard III (1483-1485), and the young princes were murdered shortly afterwards. Henry Tudor invaded England and killed Richard III. In the 1600 the bones of the boys, thought to be the princes, were discovered under a Tower staircase and reburied in Westminster Abbey.

The Queen's House is a wooden framed Tudor building. It was named after the wife of Henry VIII, Anne Boleyn who was imprisoned for a short time and then beheaded. The Gunpowder Plot Conspirators were interrogated there before being executed. Now it is the private home of the Governor of the Tower.

Now it is a unique museum in which you can feel the past centuries and touch the walls that witnessed the executions of Henry VIII's two wives and Guy Fawkes, the creation of "History of the World" by Sir Walter Raleigh and the last minutes of the unhappy nephews of Richard III. It is also a living museum in which you can watch the Tower ravens, try on the knight's armory and the king's crown, and take a picture with the Yeomen Warders who still guard the Tower.

Hampton Court Palace

Hampton Court is a grand palace beside the river Thames 24 kilometres to the west of London. It was built by **Cardinal Wolsey** in 1515 and given by him to King Henry VIII so that he would remain in favour with the king. Cardinal Wolsey, Henry's friend and adviser, was a brilliant politician and diplomat. He began building this grand palace in red brick in 1514. In 1526 he presented the unfinished palace to his king, and Henry continued the work until Hampton Court was one of the largest brick buildings in Europe. The gardens surrounding the palace, with Henry's tennis court, the orangery, and the famous maze, are all relics of the pleasures and pastimes of those days which attract thousands of tourists every year.

The palace was a residence for figures including Mary I and Elizabeth I, Charles I, William III and so on. The house was made even bigger by King William III in 1689, the additions being designed by Christopher Wren, who rebuilt and extended the palace, so that there is a mixture of styles in its architecture. The Great Gate built in Henry VIII's time presents a Tudor style, while Wren's south and east facades are performed in classical style. It houses the furniture and many objects from their times, some important works of art in the Royal Collection.

Like many English old castles and palaces, Hampton Court is haunted. According to a legend, one of the galleries is haunted by Henry's fifth wife Catherine Howard, who was executed on a charge of infidelity. Henry himself, however rests quietly: his ghost has never been seen by anybody.

Hampton Court is now open to the public. As well as its fine buildings, it is famous for its gardens and maze. Hampton Court Palace is under the management of the Historic Royal Palaces Trust.

Kensington Palace and Kew Palace

A 17th century Royal palace is in south-west London. It was partly designed by Christopher Wren. William III and Mary II bought Nottingham House in the village of Kensington when they came to the throne in 1689. The King's apartments were later decorated for king George I. Of great historical importance, Kensington Palace was the favourite residence of successive sovereigns until 1760.

Queen Victoria was born there in 1819 and it has since been the main home for many other members of the Royal family including princess Diana.

Parts of the Palace are open to the public. The ground floor of Kensington Palace is the home of the Court Dress Collection. Visitors can see the dressing room and bedroom where princess Victoria lived, state apartments with their splendid decorations, paintings and furniture. The Palace is furnished with items from the Royal Collection. It accommodates the offices and private apartments of a number of members of the Royal Family.

Three buildings at Kew, which is now a western suburb of London, have been known as **Kew Palace**. One of them survives and is open to visitors.

The old palace was built in 1631 by Samuel Fortrey.

The house contained some good pictures. The pleasure-grounds were laid out by Sir William Chambers, one of the greatest masters of ornamental English gardening.

Palace of Whitehall and the Banqueting House

The **Palace of Whitehall** was the main residence of the English monarchs in London from 1530 until 1698. The palace gives its name—Whitehall—to the road on which many of the current administrative buildings of the UK government are situated, and hence metonymically to the central government itself.

The Palace of Whitehall was largely the creation of King Henry VIII, expanding an earlier mansion that had belonged to Cardinal Wolsey, originally known as York Place. The King was determined that his new palace should be the "biggest palace in Christendom", a place befitting his newly created status as the Supreme Head of the Church of England. All evidence of the disgraced Wolsey was eliminated and the building rechristened the Palace of Whitehall.

During Henry's reign, the palace had no designated banqueting house, the King preferring to banquet in a temporary structure purpose-built in the gardens.

The first permanent banqueting house at Whitehall had a short life. It was built for **James I** but was destroyed by fire in January 1619, when workmen, clearing up after New Year's festivities, decided to incinerate the rubbish inside the building.

The term Banqueting House was something of a misnomer. The hall within the house was in fact used not only for banqueting but royal receptions, ceremonies, and the performance of masques. The entertainments given here would have been among the finest in Europe, for during this period England was considered the leading musical country of Europe. On January 5, 1617 Pochahontas was brought before the King at the Banqueting House in Whitehall Palace at a performance of Ben Jonson's masque 'The Vision of Delight.'

James II was the last monarch to live at Whitehall; William III and Mary II preferred to live elsewhere and eventually reconstructed Hampton Court Palace. Following the fire which destroyed Whitehall Palace, the Banqueting Hall became redundant for the purpose for which it was designed, and it was converted to a chapel.

Charles I commissioned Rubens to paint the vast ceiling panels, which celebrate kingship in general and the Stuart reign in particular.

The Banqueting House, Whitehall, is the grandest and best known survivor of the architectural genre of banqueting house, and the only remaining component of the Palace of Whitehall. The building is important in the history of English architecture as the first classical building to be completed in a style which was to transform English architecture.

The Banqueting House is the only integral building of the complex now standing, although it has been somewhat modified. Various other parts of the old palace still exist, often incorporated into new buildings in the Whitehall government complex. These include a tower and other parts of the former covered tennis courts from the time of Henry VIII.

The Banqueting House is the only remaining part of London's old Palace of Whitehall. Today the Banqueting House is managed by Historic Royal Palaces Trust.

THE PRIVATE HOMES

Sandringham House

Sandringham House is a country house owned by the British royal family in Norfolk. It is the King's only private residence in England. It was built in 1870 for the Prince of Wales (later King Edward VII) as a sporting and agricultural estate and is traditionally the place where the royal family spend Christmas.

The House was rebuilt as a large country mansion of red brick and local stone. Both King George V and King George VI spent much time at Sandringham and both died there. The estate is also used for shooting. The gardens are open to the public during the spring and summer months in the Royal family's absence.

Balmoral Castle

This castle is situated in Aberdeen, in the Scottish Highlands, in the valley of the river Dee. The British royal family uses it as a private holiday home every summer. It was built for Queen Victoria in 1853-1856.

The estate includes grouse moors, forest, the river and several lochs. The grounds of Balmoral are open between May and July. There are many beaches of firm sand, and the climate is dry and mild. The scenery is inviting: red sandstone cliffs swooping on the beaches divided by rocky headlines.

Inland, the crops are good and the cattle feed well on green pastures. This district was known as the “Garden of the North”.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- lavishly – щедро
- exquisite – изысканный, изящный
- to sack – разграбить
- to smuggle – провозить контрабанду
- interrogate – допрашивать
- infidelity – безбожие
- disgrace – безбожие
- incinerate – сжечь дотла
- misnomer – искажение в названии
- masque – театр масок
- redundant – чрезмерный, излишний
- integral – цельный

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. How many types of Royal residencies are there in Great Britain?
2. What are the most famous Royal Residences do you know?
3. Who built the Royal Residencies? What historical facts did you know?
4. What residencies are interesting to visit first of all? Why?
5. Why do the British people preserve the Royal Residences?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. В Букингемском дворце туристы могут увидеть лучшие в мире коллекции фарфора и живописи, которые видели еще самого Георга III. За лето дворец посещают до 30 000 гостей, порой они даже принимают участие в королевских приемах.

2. Вот некоторые цены которые будет интересно знать: Парадные залы, Букингемский дворец — Взрослые £18,00; Студентам — £16,00; Лицам моложе 17 лет — £10,25; детям до пяти лет вход бесплатно.
3. Если же вы придете в Букингемский дворец лишь за тем чтобы посетить картинную галерею то вряд или вам это удастся, потому что большая часть уникальных коллекций скрыта от глаз посетителей. А полюбоваться на уникальные достояния человечества могут лишь избранные иностранцы (например послы иностранных государств), имеющие специальные на то дипломы.
4. Букингемский дворец совершенно точно можно сравнить с мини-городком, ведь в нем находятся несколько отделений полиции, личные почтовые офисы, спортклубы, а также кинотеатры и дискотеки.
5. Виндзорская резиденция монархов - самый огромный замок в мире. В графстве Беркшир, которое известно каждому жителю Туманного Альбиона, возвышается самый красивый замок Англии. Более того, согласно многим проведенным социологическим опросам, он является еще и самым красивым замком во всем мире.
6. Королева принимает в Виндзорском замке высокопоставленных гостей страны, подписывает некоторые государственные документы и демонстрирует процветание монархии в Объединенном Королевстве.
7. Королева Великобритании живет в своей любимой резиденции лишь два месяца в году: в середине весны (в апреле) и в начале лета (в июне). Это говорит лишь о том, что «рабочий график» королевы довольно плотный.
8. Эдуард III узаконил Орден Подвязки. Из названия ордена становится понятно, что король старался жить по законам, установленным в свое время еще королем Артуром. Звание «рыцарь» не было для Эдуарда III пустым звуком. Как известно из истории, победивший в турнире рыцарь, получал в награду подвязку прекрасной дамы, отсюда и название ордена, утвержденного монархом и сыгравшего огромную роль в становлении власти короля в Туманном Альбионе.
9. После ухода в мир иной Карла II, который внес неоценимый вклад в возведение величественного Виндзорского замка, короли Англии по непонятной причине забывают о загородной резиденции вплоть до 1820-го года. В начале 19-го века на престол взошел сын Георга III, который первым делом отдал приказ, о реставрации и значительном расширении Виндзорского замка.
10. Особый интерес у всех без исключения туристов вызывает зал Святого Георгия, точнее его потолок. На нем изображены геральдические символы рыцарей, входящих в Орден Подвязки. К слову, на потолке зала Святого Георгия, можно увидеть сразу три русских

герба: Александра I, Александра II и Николая I. Все эти три русских императора были посвящены в рыцари и вошли в легендарный Орден Подвязки.

11. В Хэмптон Корт есть специальная книга, в которой фиксируются все аномальные явления, которые наблюдали работники замка или его посетители. Записей в ней на удивление много. Говорят, что одну даже сделала сама Королева Виктория.
12. Церковь Святого Георгия в Виндзорском замке - великолепный образец перпендикулярной готики. Внутри церкви находятся мощи св. Георгия и часть креста Господня.

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it,

Lesson 5

The History of British Parliament

A short history of British Parliamentarism

The United Kingdom is a constitutional or parliamentary monarchy. It means that it has a monarch (either a queen or a king) as its Head of State but the monarch has very little power. The King (or the Queen) reigns but she (he) doesn't rule. Parliament and the existent government has the power. Parliament and the monarch have different roles and they only meet together on symbolic occasions such as the coronation of a new monarch or the traditional annual opening of the Parliament.

Power in Great Britain is divided among three branches: the legislative branch, the executive branch and the judicial branch. The legislative branch is represented by Parliament, which is the oldest Parliament in the world.

The term '*parliament*' comes from the French word '*parleyment*' or 'talking place'. Parliament as a royal council of the English kings came into existence during the reign of Henry III. But the idea of a king's council went back to the Anglo-Saxon '*Witan*', and later '*the Curia Regis*', or King's Council of the Norman King, Henry I.

When William the Conqueror became King of England in 1066, he introduced more advanced form of feudal system than the country had had under the Anglo-Saxon monarchs. Under the Normans there was no chance for absolute monarchy: the barons had their own lands and soldiers and didn't let the king to have too much power. As a result there were constant quarrels between powerful barons and the kings who wanted more lands and more power.

Between 1066 and 1215, the king ruled alone, but in 1215 the nobles forced King John to sign the document called in Latin "Magna Carta" (the Great Charter), which took away some of the king's

powers. This document gave the noblemen a legitimate share in the government of the country and deprived the king of the power to treat them as he pleased.

In 1264 the first parliament of nobles met together. Since then the British Constitution has grown up slowly as a result of countless Acts of Parliament.

When Henry III, the son of King John, became the King, he tried to get more power in his hands. As a result, a civil war, later called the Baron's War, began. The King's army was defeated, and to sign the settlement with him, Simon de Monfort, the leader of the rebellious barons, summoned two barons from each "*shire*" (county) and two townsmen from each "*borough*" (city). It was the beginning of the division of English Parliament into two parts, or "houses": the House of Lords (the upper chamber, composed of the representatives of aristocracy and the Church) and the House of Commons (the lower chamber, composed of representatives of common people). For a long time, the upper chamber had more power, but with the decline of feudalism the influence of the House of Commons was growing.

When the feudal wars of the 13th and 14th centuries became history, the conflicts between the kings and the parliaments became an everyday matter. Usually they were about the right to impose taxes. For some brief periods, such as the reign of Henry VIII English monarchy seemed to move towards absolutism. But as soon as "*the firm hand*" of this or that monarch stopped threatening the lives of the troublemakers in Parliament, this institution renewed the demands for control over finance of the state. Parliament gained strength after the death of Henry VIII and was strong enough even in the days of his powerful daughter, Elizabeth I, but she preserved her popularity with Parliament by keeping her expenses as small as possible. When James I, the son of Mary Stuart, succeeded Elizabeth on the English throne, he expected to rule the country in his own way without interference from Parliament. Charles I, his son, had been brought up to believe that he ruled by "divine right" and could therefore call for as much money as he liked. But these conflicts over money matters between the King and Parliament were but a reflection of a deeper conflict that had been splitting the country for a long time.

At first government was organized to help the monarch rule the country. In the course of centuries, power gradually passed from the monarch to Parliament.

There is no written constitution in Great Britain. The term 'English Constitution' means the leading principles, conventions and laws, many of which have been existing for centuries, though they have undergone modifications and extensions in agreement with the advance of civilization. These principles are expressed in the documents of major importance: in the laws, a number of constitutional acts, agreements, the laws deciding the succession of the Royal family. The Bill of Rights (1689) was the first step towards constitutional monarchy because it prevented the monarch from making laws or raising the army without Parliaments' approval. This Act confirmed certain rights of the people. Since 1689 the power of Parliament has grown steadily while the power of the monarch has weakened.

The Houses of Parliament

British Parliament is housed in the Westminster Palace, which is situated on the left bank of the river Thames. Westminster has long been connected with royalty and government. King Edward the Confessor built a palace beside the river Thames. His successors made the palace their main residence. Gradually Westminster became the centre of government.

Westminster Palace is famous as the Houses of Parliament. It is the seat of the British Parliament – the highest legislative authority in Great Britain and its legislative power is unlimited.

The House of Commons occupies the northern part of the Westminster Palace, and the House of Lords occupies the southern end. It is here that the House of Commons makes the laws and the House of Lords discusses and debates them. It is here that the most important decisions for the country's policy are taken



It is not the only parliament in the United Kingdom. There are other parliaments – there is the Assembly of the States in the Channel Islands and there is the Tynwald in the Isle of Man and the parliaments of Northern Ireland and Scotland. But they deal with domestic matters, and, in the matters affecting their common interests, the Parliament at Westminster has overriding authority.

The original 14th – century palace was badly damaged by fire in 1834. Between 1840 and 1867, new buildings were put up.

In 1941 the House of Commons was destroyed by bombs, but it was built again after the war in exactly the same style. The House of Lords escaped the 1941 bombing. Now the Palace is a wonderful work of art with hundreds of paintings and sculptures worth seeing.

The Houses of Parliament contains offices, committee rooms, bars, libraries and even some places of residence. The Palace of Westminster, together with Victoria Tower, which houses millions of parliamentary documents, and the Clock Tower, which houses the most famous clock in the world – Big Ben, form an unmistakable architectural complex. But the Towers and the Houses of Parliament are not only associated architecturally, but also in the democratic spirit that rules the political life developed in the House of Commons, for, if Parliament is sitting – British parliamentary debates constitute a political spectacle – the flag flies on top of Victoria Tower during the whole day. If the debates go on during the night – a light burns above Big Ben in the Clock Tower. This light at night and the flag during the day-time is the signal for the people of London that the members of Parliament, each from his own political point of view, are watching over the nation's interests.

The Houses of Parliament can be visited by the public. The entrance is through the door located at the foot of Victoria Tower and next to the Royal Arch. There are many meeting halls and various parliamentary offices in this famous palace.



Visitors start at the **Royal Gallery** and then go to the House of Lords. On each side of the long hall there are huge wall paintings by the Victorian artist Daniel Maclisse.² They show the battles of Trafalgar and Waterloo. In the battle of Trafalgar the British fleet under Nelson³ broke the line of the Spanish and French fleets, capturing 20 vessels. In the battle of Waterloo on June 18, 1815, Napoleon⁴ was defeated by the British and Prussian armies under Wellington⁵ and Blucher⁶. From here, visitors proceed towards the Central Corridor – the main reception area, decorated with brightly coloured mosaics. On his way to debates Speaker walks in procession through here with the Mace, the symbol of royal authority. Passing from here visitors arrive at the Antechamber of the Commons. The House of Commons is decorated in a simple style with tiers of green seats. The government sits on one side of the

room with the Opposition on the other. There are stripes on the floor in front of each side. The distance between the stripes is the distance between two drawn swords. During the W.W.II the House of Commons was destroyed by German bombs; it was rebuilt after the war.

In the **Robing Room** the monarch puts on the Robes of State and the Imperial State Crown before Opening Parliament. The room has its own throne, and decorations based on ancient tales. The walls are painted with scenes from the story of King Arthur⁸, leader in the war against the Saxons.

At the end of the House of Commons is the Speakers Chair, on the right side of which the members of the parliamentary majority sit. The members of the groups that form the Opposition sit on the left, directly facing the Government benches. The Speaker keeps order during debates.

Another interesting point in the Houses of Parliament is **St.Stephen's Hall** which is decorated with very valuable frescos. From St.Stephen's Hall one reaches Westminster Hall. It's one of the oldest buildings in London. It was completed in 1099 and was the chief survivor of the 1834 fire. It has been used for Royal Christmas feasts, coronation banquets. A terrorist bomb slightly damaged the hall in 1974.

Big Ben is the huge bell in the clock of St. Stephen's Tower. It may have been named after Sir Benjamin Hall, who supervised the rebuilding of Parliament. The great bell was cast in London foundry in 1858. The question of its name was discussed in Parliament. "Big Ben" is the name of the bell only – not the clock, and not the tower.

People who visit the Houses of Parliament may sit in the Strangers' Gallery looking down into the House of Commons and listen to the debates. The central entrance hall is usually busy with people coming and going to see the buildings and others wanting to see their Members of Parliament.

The Gunpowder plot

Famous events in the history of the House of Parliament include the Gunpowder Plot. The story goes that there was a plot to destroy the Houses of Parliament and kill King James I during the ceremony of opening Parliament on November 5, 1605.

The plot was organized by a group of Roman Catholics. In 1604 the conspirators rented a house near the House of Lords. From this house they dug a tunnel to a vault below the House of Lords and put into the vault 36 barrels of gunpowder. The plot was discovered because one of the conspirators wrote a letter to his relative, a member of the House of Lords, warning him to stay away from the House of Lords on the 5th of November. On November 4, a search was made in the parliament vaults, and the gunpowder was found, together with Guy Fawkes who was to set off the explosion. Guy Fawkes was hanged.

The historical meaning of the event is no longer important, but this day is traditionally celebrated with fireworks and a bonfire, on which the figure of a man called Guy is burnt.

Political Parties

The first political parties in Great Britain appeared in Charles II's reign.

One of these parties was a group of MPs who became known as **Whigs**, a rude name for Scottish cattle thieves, but the term Whig was given to those people who wanted to exclude James II from the throne. The Whigs were afraid of an absolute monarchy and of the Catholic faith with which they connected it. They also didn't want to have regular army. The Whigs believed that Parliament should have more power than the king or queen. They believed in religious freedom and political reforms.

The other party, which opposed the Whigs, was nicknamed **Tories**. Tory was originally the name given to Irishmen whose land had been taken away and who had become outlaws, but the term Tory was given to those people who supported James II, the Crown and the Church. In 1670 the Tories were originally a group of politicians who wanted the Roman Catholic James, Duke of York (later James II) to be allowed to become king of England. They were powerful for various periods during the 18th and 19th centuries.

These two parties, the Whigs and the Tories, became the basis of Britain's two-party parliamentary system of government.

Now the British political scene is dominated by a two-party system: one party in power, the other in opposition. They are the Conservative (the Tories) and the Labour Parties (the Whigs).

The Conservative Party is one of the main British political parties. It developed from the old “Tory Party” from the 1830s and is still sometimes called by this name. It’s a right-wing party, supporting capitalism and free enterprise (an economic system in which there is open competition in business and trade, and no government control). It is against state control of industry.

The Labour Party, sometimes called the Socialists, was established to represent the interests of workers, and traditionally supported by the trade unions. The Labour Party is one of the main British political parties. It developed from the old Party “Whigs” in the late 17th century, although it is now not as left-wing as it used to be. It has many supporters, especially among working-class and middle-class people.

Among the other parties one can mention the Liberal Party, the Scottish National Party, the Welsh Nationalist Party, the National Front and Democratic Left.

The Liberal Party developed in the mid 19th century and became the party of social and political reform. It lost support after the rise of the Labour Party in the early 20th century. In the elections of 1983 and 1987 the Liberals achieved some success by joining with the Social Democratic Party to form the Alliance, and the two parties were officially united in 1988. They are now called the Liberal Democratic Party.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- to constitute a political spectacle – представлять собой политическое зрелище
- to watch over - охранять
- at the foot – у основания, у подножья
- to capture – захватить
- vessel - судно
- to proceed – отправляться дальше
- the reception area - приёмная
- the Mace – жезл, булава
- the Ante-chamber - вестибюль
- drawn swords – обнажённые мечи
- Temporal – светский, мирской
- secured - охранять
- the Canopy – балдахин, навес
- a cushion – диванная подушка
- the Robes of State – мантия монарха
- feasts – пир, банкет
- to be cast – отливать, лить (металл)
- foundry – литейный цех
- the Gunpowder Plot – пороховой заговор
- the conspirators - заговорщики
- a tunnel - тоннель

-a vault – подвал, погреб

-a barrel - бочка

-to set off - поджечь

-a bonfire - костёр

Practice the following for pronunciation.

Proper names: the Houses of Parliament, Westminster Abbey, Buckingham Palace, Victoria Tower, Royal Arch, Trafalgar, Waterloo, Napoleon, Prussian, Wellington, Blucher, Magna Carta, the Cloth of Estate, the Lord Chancellor, Spiritual Side, King Arthur, St. Stephen's Hall, Roman Catholics, Catholicism, Protestantism, Guy Fawkes, the Pope, Henry VIII, Catherine of Aragon, Ann Boleyn, Jane Seymour, Ann of Cleves, Catherine Howard, Catherine Parr, Great Empire.

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What does constitutional monarchy mean?
2. How is power in Great Britain divided?
3. What does 'parliament' mean? What is the history of English parliament?
4. Is there written constitution in Great Britain now?
5. Where is British Parliament housed?
6. Why is the Houses of Parliament so famous?
7. What are the main historical buildings of the Palace?
8. Can Westminster Palace be visited by the public? Describe the most famous State Rooms and Halls of the Palace?
9. How is the Gunpowder Plot connected with the history of the Parliament?
10. When did the first political parties appear in Great Britain?
11. What political parties became the basis of Britain's parliamentary system of government? What was their politics?
12. What other political parties are there in Great Britain now?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. Гуляя пешком по Вестминстеру вы пройдёте мимо самых важных достопримечательностей, относящихся к королевской и политической власти Великобритании.
2. Вестминстерский дворец, более известный сегодня как Палата общин и Палата лордов, является самым старым королевским дворцом в Лондоне и одним из самых красивых зданий в мире.
3. Основанный на территории средневекового дворца, и возможно римского Храма, посвященного Аполлону, дворец был центром политической жизни Великобритании с первой половины 11-го века.
4. Сегодня самая старая сохранившаяся часть Палаты общин и Палаты лордов — **Вестминстер-Холл**, датируется временем правления короля Вильгельма II. Построенный в 1097 году, это — самый старый церемониальный зал в Великобритании и долгое время был самым большим залом в Европе.
5. Другие исторические части включают **часовню Св. Марии** времен Эдуарда I, 1297 года постройки и **Jewel Tower**, построенную Эдуардом III в 1366 году. Башня Драгоценного камня

(Jewel Tower), напротив башни Виктории, была предназначена для хранения драгоценностей короны и является частью оригинального Вестминстерского дворца. Сейчас в здании находится выставка, посвященная истории Парламента.

6. С 1016 до 1512 года, это стратегически важное строение на берегу Темзы было главным местом жительства королей Англии, пока большая часть комплекса не была разрушена огнем.

7. Святой Эдуард Исповедник построил первый дворец здесь в 1050 году, в то же время, что и Вестминстерское аббатство. Дворец состоял из комплекса зданий, включающих зал и частные покои. После нормандского завоевания 1066 года дворец стал официальным местом собраний Королевского Совета (Курия Реджис). Первый избранный парламент начал работать здесь в 1265 году, во время правления короля Генриха III Плантагенета.

8. Самая известная часть здания — **Башня с часами**, которую чаще называют Биг-Бен, с 2012 года носит имя Елизаветы. Биг-Бен — колокольная башня. Название башни возникло от названия 13-тонного колокола, установленного внутри неё Башня была возведена в 1858 году, башенные часы были пущены в ход 21 мая 1859 года Высота башни 61 метр (не считая шпиля); часы располагаются на высоте 55 м от земли. При диаметре циферблата в 7 метров и длиной стрелок в 2,7 и 4,2 метра, часы долгое время считались самыми большими в мире.

9. **Башня Виктории**, южная башня, 102 м высотой, была в 19-ом веке самой большой и самой высокой башней в мире. На ее вершине, на флагштоке высотой 15 м, поднимают Государственный флаг Соединенного Королевства, когда парламент проводит заседания.

10. Первую комнату, в которую Вы входите, называют **Королевской комнатой костюма** (Queen's Robing Room). Там Королева надевает специальную одежду и Имперскую государственную Корону, которая доставляется сюда из Лондонского Тауэра.

11. Затем Вы пройдете через **королевскую галерею** (Royal Gallery). С обеих сторон галереи висят две большие картины: на первой запечатлена смерть адмирала Нельсона при Трафальгарском сражении, на второй — Герцог Веллингтон встречает Блюхера (своего прусского союзника) после битвы при Ватерлоо. Главы государств зарубежных стран иногда произносят речи в этой комнате во время посещения Парламента.

12. **Комната принца** (Prince's Chamber) — небольшой зал, используемый в качестве кабинета. Эта комната находится над подвалом, где Гай Фокс поместил бочки с порохом в ноябре 1605 года, планируя взорвать Парламент и короля Иакова Первого.

13. Места, где сидят члены палаты лордов, красного цвета: раньше красный был самым дорогим цветом, поэтому традиционно использовался самыми богатыми членами общества.

14. Пройдя через Коридор, Вы достигаете **вестибюля Палаты общин** (Central Lobby), Эта область дворца была разрушена немецкой бомбой в мае 1941 года, во время Второй мировой войны. Британским премьер-министром в то время был Уинстон Черчилль. Он приказал, чтобы Палата общин была восстановлена в прежних размерах с использованием максимального количества оригинального камня. Его статуя расположена в вестибюле.

15. Многие политики пользуются случаем потереть ногу Черчилля перед входом в Палату общин, в надежде на удачу и получение дара красноречия, как у Черчилля. В феврале 2007 года, здесь же была помещена бронзовая статуя Маргарет Тэтчер, которая была британским премьер-министром с 1979 по 1990 годы.

16. **Церемония Хлопанья дверью** перед лицом Герольдмейстера во время Открытия Парламента является постоянным напоминанием о независимости Палаты общин.

17. **Зал Св. Стефана** находится на территории часовни старого Вестминстерского дворца. В средневековые времена она тогда использовалась в качестве первого места заседаний Палаты общин.

18. **Вестминстер-Холл** (Westminster Hall) когда-то использовался в качестве зала суда. Среди людей, которые были подвергнуты судебному преследованию здесь и осуждены на смерть, Уильям Уоллес (1305), Гай Фокс (1606) и Карл Первый (1649). Высокий суд переехал в Royal Courts of Justice в 1825 году. В этом зале проводились торжественные обеды в день коронации до времени Георга Четвертого (1820-1830).
19. В последнее время зал использовался в качестве одного из мест, где иностранные главы государств произносят речи.
20. Вестминстер-Холл также используется для церемонии прощания высокопоставленных деятелей Великобритании. Именно здесь проходила церемония прощания с Уинстоном Черчиллем в 1965 году, Королевой-матерью в 2002 году.
21. Тур по **Биг-Бену** и Элизабет Тауэр доступен только для граждан Великобритании и совершенно бесплатно. Он пользуется большой популярностью у британцев, на него записываются заранее, обычно за полгода.
22. Британцы и зарубежные посетители могут заказать билеты на экскурсию, полностью посвященную архитектуре и современной портретной живописи, коллекции которой находятся в **Portcullis House**.
23. Portcullis House, единственное новое здание Парламента, построенное после 19-го века. Оно было разработано ведущим британским архитектором Майклом Хопкинсом и официально открыто королевой в феврале 2001 года.
24. В Portcullis House хранится уникальная коллекция художественных произведений, показывающих парламентариев за работой в картинах и фотографиях.

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it,

Lesson 6

The Legislative Branch of British Government

Functions of the Monarch

Great Britain is a parliamentary monarchy. Officially the head of the state is the king or queen. The power of the monarch is not absolute but constitutional. The monarch acts only on the advice of the ministers.

The hereditary principle upon which the monarchy is founded is strictly observed.

The monarch, be it king or queen, is an integral part of the legislature, the head of the executive body, the head of the judicial body, the commander-in-chief of the armed forces of the crown, the head of the Established Church of England and the head of the British Commonwealth of Nations.

The British monarchy is a very popular institution largely due to the fact that it doesn't actually govern. The Sovereign has wide theoretical powers but they are seldom used.

The colourful ceremonies and traditions associated with the British Monarchy are rich in history and meaning and fascinating to watch. In some, the King takes part in person. In others (**Guard Mounting or Swan Upping**) – the ceremony is performed in the King's name. Many of the ceremonies

take place on a regular basis – every year or even every day – which means that British people and visitors to London and other parts of the United Kingdom may have an opportunity to see some of these interesting events take place.

The King has many ceremonial roles. Some – such as **the State Opening of Parliament**, **Audiences** with new ambassadors and **the Presentation of decorations at Investitures** – relate to the King's role as Head of State.

Others – such as **the presentation of Maundy money** and **the hosting of garden parties** – are

historical ceremonies in which kings and queens have taken part for decades or even centuries.

In addition to the events in which the King takes part, there are many other ceremonies and traditions associated with the British Monarchy. Some of these have military associations, involving troops from the present **Armed Forces** as well as the members of the historical Royal bodyguard, **the Yeomen of the Guard**. Others are traditions which are less well known than the colourful pageantry but are interesting in their own right: **the customary broadcasts by the Sovereign on Christmas Day and Commonwealth Day**.

- **The State Opening of Parliament** is the official opening of each session of the British Parliament. The

ceremony takes place each year in October or November, and after a change of government. The King travels in a special coach to the Houses of Parliament and makes **the King's Speech** to members of both Houses in the House of Lords. The Opening of Parliament is an occasion of very traditional and picturesque ceremony, which reminds MPs of their special status and of their "togetherness. According to the long-standing tradition, the King still opens the new session of Parliament each autumn by reading the King's Speech in the House of Lords. The speech he makes has been written for him. He might ask the government ministers to change the wording in the speech a little beforehand. He reads the script that has been prepared for him, word for word. He cannot actually stop the government going ahead with any of its policies. He makes no secret of this fact.

Another tradition is that the King is not allowed to enter the House of Commons. This tradition reminds everybody that the monarch mustn't try to govern the country.

Black Rod, a servant of the King, is knocking on the door of the House of Commons and demanding that the MPs let the King come in and tell them what her government is going to do in the coming year. The Commons always refuse her entry. This is because, in the 17th century, King Charles I



Black Rod

Photo: Library of Parliament / Jonathan Hayward

burst into the chamber and tried to arrest some MPs. The doors were barred against Black Rod. Ever since then, the monarch hasn't been allowed to enter the Commons.

Today the Commons slam their door in Black Rod's face. The King goes to the House of Lords and reads a speech which tells what laws the Government includes to make. The MPs agree to come through to the House of Lords and listen to the monarch in there. By tradition they always come through in pairs, each pair comprising MPs from two different parties. The members of the House of Commons listen to the King standing at the entrance to the House of Lords. After the King's Speech MPs go to the House of Commons.

- **Royal visits.** Visits to all kinds of places throughout the United Kingdom, Commonwealth and overseas are an important part of the work of the King and members of the Royal family. Many of the visits are connected to charities and other organizations with which members of the Royal family are associated. In other cases, royal visits help to celebrate historic occasions in the life of a region or nation. All visits are carefully planned to ensure that as many people as possible have the opportunity to see or meet members of the Royal family.

- **The Presentation of decorations at Investitures.** Twice a year several hundred British people who have distinguished themselves in some way receive a variety of honours. A few are given **life peerages**, some are made **knights**, and many others are given lesser awards. **The Honours Lists** are published on New Year's Day and in mid June on the present King's official birthday. At the end of each Parliament before a general election, the Prime Minister recommends a list of politicians for the **Dissolution Honours**.

For a long time honours were given almost automatically to senior members of the armed forces and the Civil Service, and to those who had contributed to party political funds. In 1993 John Major⁵ announced a reduction in the number of such honours and said that more awards were to be given to members of the public nominated for honours by colleagues and friends, or by people who admire their achievements. The Ceremonial Secretariat receives nominations and draws up a final list which is approved by the prime minister. As well as the names of politicians and businessmen, it contains charity workers, well-known sports and television personalities, actors, musicians and many ordinary people. Honours are awarded by the king or queen in a ceremony at Buckingham Palace where the people whose names appear on the list are then summoned.

Ranks and Orders

Many of the orders are associated with one of several **orders of chivalry**. Some of the orders have different grades of membership, e.g. '**knight**', '**commander**', '**officer**' and '**member**'. Many people are given awards in the Order of the British Empire. Famous people may be given a **CBE** (commander rank) or **OBE** (officer rank); people recommended by members of the public are usually given an **MBE** (member rank). Most honours allow a person to put the appropriate letters after their name. In addition to

these honours there are many medals and decorations for bravery, for civilians as well as for members of the police and the armed forces.

Knighthood is a rank of a knight. Knight is a man given the rank of knighthood by the British monarch in recognition of merit in public service. He has the title ‘**Sir**’, his wife has a title ‘**Lady**’. This rank is not hereditary. ‘**Dame**’ of the British Empire is female title equivalent to knighthood and used before the name.

There are 9 **British Orders of Knighthood: the Order of the Garter** (1348), **the Order of the Thistle** (1687), **the Order of St Patrick** (1788), **the Order of the Bath** (1399), **the Star of India** (1861), **the Order of St Michael and St George** (1818), **the Order of the Indian Empire** (1877), **the Royal Victorian Order** (1896), **the Order of the British Empire** (1917).

Order of the Garter is the oldest and highest order of Knighthood. It includes members of the British and other royal families and a maximum of 24 other people. It was probably started in 1348 by King Edward III. According to tradition, it was named after an occasion at a ball when a Countess of Salisbury in the presence of the king dropped a garter (a band worn around the leg to hold up a sock). The king saved her from embarrassment by picking up the garter and fixing it to his own leg, saying “Honi soit qui mal y pense”, French for “Shame on anyone who thinks badly of this”. This phrase became the motto of the order.

The only Ladies of the Garter were the Queen Elizabeth II and her eldest daughter.

Since 1912 only Sir Winston Churchill was awarded the Order of the Garter in 1957. The Order gives the bearer a place in Chapel of Windsor where the Royal family attends the mass and the right to be buried in Westminster Abbey.

Order of the Thistle is the highest order of Scotland. The Order was started by King James II in 1687 and is mainly for members of the Scottish peerage. The thistle is the national emblem of Scotland.

Order of St Patrick is one of the highest orders in Great Britain founded by King George III in 1783.

Order of the Bath is one of the highest orders of Great Britain. The full name of the order is the Most Honourable Order of the Bath. It may have been started as early as 1399, but it later disappeared and was started again by George I in 1725. A bearer of the Order receives one of three ranks: Knight Grand Cross, Knight Commander, Knight Companion. In old times the receiver of the Order used to stand on the knee and the king or queen touched his left shoulder with a sword saying: “Rise, Sir...” Originally, people receiving the order washed in a bath as part of the ceremony. Nowadays, the names of those who are granted these orders are published in the press under signature of the King on every New Year.

Star of India is an order established by Queen Victoria in 1861 for decoration of the merited servicemen in the colonial troops in India before its Independence in 1947.

Order of St Michael and St George was established in 1818 to confer on diplomats and highest officers.



Order of the Indian Empire was established by Queen Victoria in 1878.

Royal Victorian Order was established by Queen Victoria in 1896 and was to confer on those who have done outstanding services to the monarch and the royal family.



Order of the British Empire is one of the British orders of chivalry. People who are appointed to this order receive one of five ranks. The Order was started in 1917. Its full title is the Most Excellent Order of the British Empire.

The House of Lords and the House of Commons

Power in Great Britain is divided among three branches: the legislative, the executive branch and the judicial branch.

The legislative branch is represented by Parliament which consists of two chambers: **the House of Lords and the House of Commons**. The House of Lords consists of about 1200 members. The youngest of them, irrespective of the age, is usually referred to as "**the Baby of the House**". The members are usually divided into two groups: "**Lords Spiritual**" (the Archbishop of Canterbury, the Archbishop of York, and 24 bishops of the Church of England) and "**Lords Temporal**". Lords Temporal consists of hereditary peers of England and Scotland – dukes, marquises, earls and barons – who got their right to sit in the House from their ancestors and transmit their right to their eldest sons, "**life**" **peers**, who earned this title by their distinguished work for the country but they don't have the right to pass it to their children, and 9 "**law lords**" – members of the **High Court of Justice**.

New peers are created by the monarch on the advice of Prime Minister. As a result, one third of the Lords today are not representatives of hereditary nobility but company directors, bankers, newspaper proprietors and other businessmen.

By custom, the Royal Dukes (members of the Royal Family) don't attend the sittings of the House.

The Lords don't depend on elections and can avoid "*political football*" typical for the House of Commons. The Lords are often looked upon as the positive conservative force that helps Britain to avoid radical changes in politics.

The House of Lords sits for about 140 days in each session. The Lords have a right to suggest a bill. But, by tradition, the Lords never use the right, limiting their legislative activities by discussions and

approvals of the bills prepared and passed by the House of Commons. Fifty years ago the Lords had a right of veto; they could prevent a bill from becoming a law. Now they have no right to veto a bill but can delay its becoming a law for a period of one year. There is one exception here – the Lords cannot hold up any “Money Bill”, i.e. the bill dealing with taxation.

So the Lords don't make laws: they can only approve the laws made by the Commons. But the Lords have more power than the Commons, because the High Court of Justice is a part of this chamber. The head of this important body is the presiding officer of the House – **Lord Chancellor** himself. The modern House of Lords is a forum for public discussion. It's the place where proposals for new laws are discussed in great detail - much more detail than the busy Commons has time for – and in this way irregularities in these proposals can be removed before they become law. It's argued, the Lords is a check on a government, its control of the Commons could possibly become too dictatorial. Most people agree that having two Houses of Parliament is a good idea and that House of Lords could have more useful function (without the hereditary element). However, at this time, nobody can agree on what would be the best way to reform the composition of the House of Lords and so it remains as a fascinating (but valuable) anachronism in a modern state.

The House of Lords is a chamber in rich tones of red and gold. The walls are lined with painting and with statues of the barons who secured the Magna Carta from King John in 1215. At the south end of the chamber is the gilded Royal Throne which stands opposite the chair of the presiding officer of the chamber – Lord Chancellor. This chair is known as **the Woolsack** – a cushion stuffed with wool from England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. This tradition of stuffing the chair of Lord Chancellor with wool dates back to the days of **King Edward III** (14th century), when wool was the main article of English export. Now it symbolizes what was once England's chief source of wealth. **The Lord Chancellor** takes his place to preside over the sittings as the Speaker of the House of Lords.

The Canopy above the Throne represents the Cloth of Estate, to which Lords bow on entering. When the House is sitting, the eldest sons of the Peers, Bishops, who are not members of the House, Privy Councillors (тайные советники) and certain other distinguished persons may sit on the steps of the throne.

The benches on the left are for supporters of the Government, and those on the right for supporters of the Opposition. The Liberal and Social Democrat Peers normally occupy the benches on the right nearest the Woolsack. The leading members of each party traditionally sit on the front benches. The Government side of the House, where the Leader of the House and Ministers of the Crown sit is known as the “**Spiritual Side**” and the Opposition side as the “**Temporal Side**”.

There are 651 members in **the House of Commons** (most of them are professional politicians, lawyers, etc.). During important debates they remain in the House, and the sittings may go on until late at night. Members of the House of Commons are elected for five years.

Important members in the House of Commons are **the Speaker** and the so-called party **whips**. (party organizers who arrange each day programme in Parliament and tell members when they must attend debates).

The Speaker is the **Chairman** or presiding officer of the House of Commons. He is elected at the beginning of each new Parliament. He cannot debate or vote with other members unless the voting is equal, in which case he votes with Government.

The party that wins the most seats in a general election forms the government and its leader becomes **the Prime Minister**, the head of the government. He or she usually takes policy decisions with the agreement of the **Cabinet of Ministers**. The Power of the Cabinet, in its turn, is controlled by the Parliament, for no bill can become law until it is passed by an Act of Parliament. If the majority of MPs is for the bill it is sent to **the House of Lords** for discussion. When the Lords agree, the bill is taken to the King for the Royal Assent. The King signs, and **the Great Seal** is fixed. The bill becomes **an Act of Parliament** and part of **the Law of Land**.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- symbolic occasions – символические мероприятия
- chamber, or house - палата
- landowners - землевладельцы
- In the course of – в течение
- nobles - знать
- the Great Charter – Великая Хартия
- Acts of Parliament – закон, постановление парламента
- violent changes – сильные, насильственные перемены
- approval - одобрение
- democracy – демократическое государство
- to vote - голосовать
- compulsory - обязательный
- right-wing- правое (реакционное) крыло политической партии
- left-wing – левое крыло политической партии
- Royal Assent – королевская санкция (парламентского законопроекта)
- the Great Seal – большая государственная печать
- hereditary – передаваемый по наследству
- “life” peer – пожизненное звание лорда (дающееся на всю жизнь)
- lord spiritual – духовный, церковный представитель палаты лордов
- civil servant – служащий государственного учреждения
- The Lord Chancellor – лорд-канцлер (глава судебного ведомства и верховный судья Англии, председатель палаты лордов и одного из отделений верховного суда)
- Woolsack – набитая шерстью подушка, на которой сидит лорд-канцлер в палате лордов

- *procedure* - процедура
- *Rod* - жезл
- *whip* – парламентский партийный организатор

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Is monarchy absolute or constitutional in Great Britain?
2. How does the monarch act in modern Great Britain?
3. Why is the British monarchy a very popular institution?
4. What are the main functions of the monarch nowadays?
5. Describe the ceremony of the State Opening of Parliament?
6. What are the main ranks in Great Britain?
7. What are the main Orders in Great Britain?
8. What are the main functions of the House of Lords?
9. Who are the main representatives of the House of Lords?
10. Describe the interior of the House of Lords?
11. What are the main functions of the House of Commons?
12. Who are the main representatives of the House of Commons?
10. Describe the interior of the House of Commons?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. Нельзя заседать в палате лордов лицам младше 21 года, а также не являющимся гражданами Содружества или Ирландии.
2. Раньше женщины не могли заседать в палате лордов, даже если они были по праву пэрами. После принятия Закона о палате лордов 1999, наследуемые пэрессы смогли проходить в верхнюю палату. Все женщины палаты лордов — светские леди.
3. Палата лордов известна своей колоритной достопримечательностью — мешком с шерстью. Это обитый красным сукном пуф, на котором сидит во время заседаний лорд-канцлер. Традицию около шести веков назад ввел Эдуард III с целью напоминания всем о важном значении для Королевства этого товара.
4. Зарплату английские лорды не получают, за исключением судей, спикера и тех, кто одновременно входит и в состав кабинета министров. Однако они имеют право на компенсацию расходов за время, которое находились на заседаниях. В среднем содержание одного лорда в год обходится в 149 тысяч фунтов стерлингов.

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it.

Lesson 7

The Executive Branch of British Government

The Prime Minister and his functions

The main function of the executive branch of the government is to administer the laws. One of the characteristic features of British government is that the highest executive authority (the Cabinet) is a part of the highest legislative authority (Parliament). The executive branch is headed by the Prime Minister, who is appointed by the king or queen. According to tradition, the Prime Minister is the leader of the party that has won the elections and has the majority in the House of Commons.

The residence of the Prime Minister is situated in **Downing Street**. That is why when the journalists write about changes in the country's policy and other important political decisions, they often use the name of this street as synonym of the British Government. But the Prime Minister and the members of the Cabinet are changeable people whose position depends on the results of the latest General Election. In order to function normally, the Government needs some permanent officials, not dependable on the results of elections. In England they are called **civil servants**. So when the journalists write about the political decisions of the Cabinet, they recall the name of another London street – **Whitehall**. It is the place where the offices of **the Civil Service** are situated.

The Prime Minister in the name of the Monarch, directs all executive work of the Government. Under his guidance, the members of the Cabinet prepare the definite actions, while civil servants supply them with necessary materials. Local authorities carry out the practical application of these policies and materials.

Formally, the appointment of Prime Minister must receive royal approval. Prime Minister acts as the Monarch's private advisor. In reality he has a very great power. All social functions of the Monarch are prepared and organized by the Prime Minister: opening of the new session of Parliament with Throne speech, visits to the various parts of the country and abroad, etc. Prime Minister is politically responsible for these royal acts and is blamed in case of any mistake.

After a formal royal approval in his post, the new Prime Minister appoints his most prominent followers as members of **the Cabinet**. In addition, Prime Minister is also responsible for appointing people to more than 50 most important positions in the state. All political roads in the British State lead to the office of Prime Minister. Appointing members of Parliamentary Committees Prime Minister can coordinate the country's legislature. Choosing people for the positions of the bishops of the Church of England, Prime Minister can influence religious policies of the state. Appointing the members of the Statutory Boards Prime Minister can influence the work of nationalized industries. And certainly, the

most important function of Prime Minister is to be responsible for the work of the Government, which includes the Cabinet, the Civil Service, and the local authorities.

Most of the Ministers are chosen from the House of Commons, but a few must be in the House of Lords, so that government plans can be explained there.

The Prime Minister is by tradition First Lord of the Treasury and Minister for the Civil Service. Unlike an American President, a British Prime Minister can remain in the job as long as the party he or she represents is in power. The Prime Minister has regular meetings with the sovereign to inform him or her of the activities of the government.

In fact, a modern Prime Minister has a great dominance over the monarch and the ministers. First, the monarch's powers of patronage (the power to appoint people to all kinds of jobs and to confer honours on people) are actually the PM's powers of patronage.

The second reason for a modern PM's dominance is the power of the PM's public image. The mass media has tended to make politics a matter of personalities. The details of policies are hard to understand. An individual, constantly appearing on the television and in the newspapers, is much easier to identify with. Everybody in the country can recognize the Prime minister, while many cannot put a name to the faces of the other ministers. As a result the PM can go "over the heads" of the other ministers and appeal directly to the public.

Third, all ministers except the PM are kept busy looking after their government departments. They don't have time to think about and discuss government policy as a whole. But the PM does, and cabinet committees usually report directly to him. Moreover, the cabinet office is directly under the PM's control and works in the same building. As a result, the PM knows more about what is going on than the other ministers do. Because there is not enough time for the cabinet to discuss most matters, a choice has to be made about what will be discussed. And it is the PM who makes that choice. Matters that are not discussed can be decided by the PM. The convention of collective responsibility then means that the rest of the government has to go along with whatever the PM has decided.

There is a tradition to put questions to the Prime Minister in the House of Commons for half an hour each week, on Wednesday afternoons. The questions are from both government and Opposition Members of Parliament and are not known by the Prime Minister in advance. The answers often lead to noisy disagreement between members of parliament in different parties. The occasion is broadcast on television.

The Cabinet and the Civil Service

In Britain, the Cabinet is a kind of "inner government" within the Government. The Cabinet is a committee responsible for deciding government policy and for coordinating the work of government departments. It directs the administration, controls the process of lawmaking, and dominates the House of Commons. It decides what subjects shall be debated in the House.

This institution developed from the council of the King's trusted officials, called **the Privy Council**, among whom were such officials as the Chancellor, the Treasurer and the King's secretary. The Chancellor later became the Lord Chancellor. It is interesting that the Cabinet as an institution is not recognized by any law even now. Technically it is an informal committee of Privy Councillors. Among other members of the Privy Council there are the representatives of hereditary aristocracy, of the Church, of the highest judiciary institution and even the people who are not connected with government at all – distinguished writers, architects, and so on. All Privy Councillors are entitled to the prefix “The Right Honourable” before their name. They remain Privy Councillors for life, irrespective of whether or not they occupy any official posts.

Now the Cabinet consists of about 20 ministers chosen by the Prime Minister and meets for a few hours each week at Downing Street. Its members are bound by oath not to talk about the meetings. They don't mention who agreed or disagreed. The principle of **collective responsibility** means that the Cabinet acts unanimously, even if some ministers don't agree. When a policy has been decided, each minister is expected to support it publicly or resign. In recent years, prime ministers have changed the members of their Cabinet quite often in Cabinet **reshuffles**. Some members are dropped, new ones are brought in, and the rest are given new departmental responsibilities. Over the years the membership of the Cabinet has varied in size between 17 and 23 and includes **the Lord President of the Council, the Lord Chancellor**. Most of the members of the Cabinet have the title of **the Secretary of State**. The exceptions are the members responsible for finance (**Chancellor of the Exchequer**) and for agriculture (**Minister of Agriculture**). Their political assistants are usually called **junior ministers**. If a Cabinet member's title is the Secretary of State, his junior minister is usually called **the Undersecretary of State**.

The leader of the main opposition party forms **a shadow cabinet** of **shadow ministers** each with a particular area of responsibility, so that there is a team ready to take over immediately if the party in power should be defeated.

The composition of the Cabinet

Prime Minister, Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, Secretary of State for the Home Department, Chancellor of the Exchequer (Head of the Treasury), Secretary of State for Trade and Industry, Secretary of State for Defence, Lord Privy Seal, Secretary of State for Social Service, Minister for Agriculture, Fisheries and Food, Secretary of State for Environment, Secretary of State for Employment, Secretary of State for Education and Science, Secretary of State for Energy, Secretary of State for Transport, Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster, Secretary of State for Wales, Secretary of State for Scotland, Secretary of State for Northern Ireland.

Outstanding Politicians of Great Britain

Outstanding British Politicians

Sir Robert Walpole

(1676-1745)

Sir Robert Walpole was a British politician and Britain's first Prime Minister. He served the longest time of any prime minister and was the first to live at "Number 10 Downing Street". His periods in power were times of peace and economic success for the country, although Walpole himself was accused of dishonest behaviour in government. He was made an earl in 1742.



Winston Churchill

(1874-1965)

Winston Churchill was a politician who is remembered as one of Britain's greatest statesmen. He is best known for his courageous leadership as **Prime Minister** during World War II.

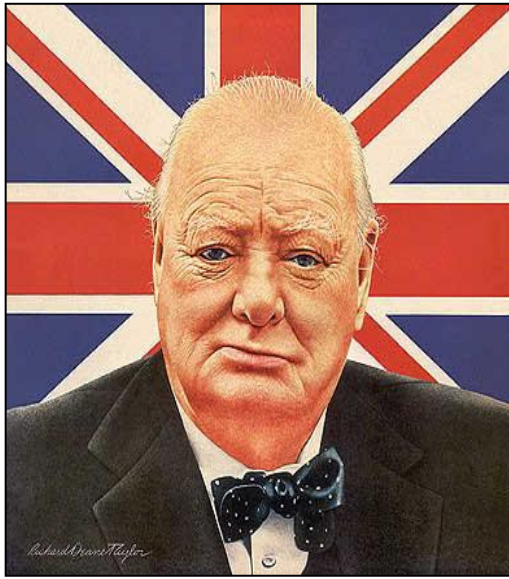
He was born on November 30, 1874. He was the eldest son of aristocrat and Conservative politician Lord Randolph Churchill and his American wife Jennie.

He graduated from **the Royal Military College** in Sandhurst. As a young man he served as a soldier in India and Egypt. Then he was a war correspondent in South Africa where he was captured during the **Boer War**. After his escape he joined the Conservative Party. Since then he was taking an active part in Britain's political life, occupying a number of important posts in the government. He was a member of Parliament from 1900 to 1965 for five different constituencies. He started as a Conservative, changed to the Liberal Party in 1904 and back to the Conservative Party in 1925. Between 1906 and 1929 he held many important positions in government, but went against the general feeling of his day in opposing Hitler's moves to increase Germany's supplies of weapons.

When Neville Chamberlain was forced to resign in 1940, Churchill became Prime Minister and Minister of Defence.

During the Second World War he successfully secured military aid and moral support from the United States. He travelled endlessly during the war, establishing close ties with the leaders of other nations and co-ordinated a military strategy which finally brought about Hitler's defeat.

His radio speeches during World War II gave the British people a strong determination to win the war especially at times of great crisis. His tireless efforts gained admiration from all over the world. But the Conservative Party, led by Churchill, lost the election of 1945, but he became Prime Minister again



fro 1951 to 1955 when he retired, aged 80 because of ill health.

He was made a Knight in 1953. He spent most of his last years writing and painting. He wrote the book “The History of the English-speaking people”. In recognition of his historical studies he was given **the Nobel Prize for Literature** in 1953.

He was famous for smoking a large cigar, and making a “V-sign for ‘victory’”. He was often referred to simply as ‘Winnie’ and is remembered with great affection in both Britain and the US. In 1963 Congress made him an honorary American citizen.

Sir Winston Churchill died in 1965 at the age of 90. His death marked the end of an era in British history.

Margaret Thatcher

(1925 - 2013)

Margaret Thatcher was a British Conservative politician who became Britain’s first woman in European history prime minister and was one of the longest serving British prime ministers of the 20th century.



Margaret Thatcher is the second daughter of a grocer and dressmaker. She was born on October 13, 1925, in Lincolnshire, England. She was a clever child. Early in life she decided to become a member of Parliament. She was educated at **Somerville College** and at **Oxford University**. She earned a ‘master of arts degree’ from Oxford in 1950 and worked for a short time as a research chemist. In 1950 she married Denis Thatcher, a director of a paint firm. After her marriage she specialized in tax law.

She became a member of Parliament in 1959. Because of her debating skills she soon became prominent among other politicians.

In 1970 she became a member of the Cabinet where she was made Secretary of State for education and science. In 1974 she became the leader of the Conservative Party. When the Conservative Party won a decisive victory in the 1979 general elections, Thatcher became Prime Minister. As Prime Minister she believed that the state shouldn’t interfere in business, and privatized many industries that were owned by

the state. She reduced the power of the trade unions by a series of laws. She wanted people not to rely on the welfare state, and instead to pay for their own health care, education and pensions.

People were often critical of Mrs Thatcher's policies and blamed her for the decline of many British industries and high unemployment. However she was seen as a very determined and patriotic Prime Minister, and she became especially popular after the 'Falklands War'². Because of this she was often referred to as the '**Iron Lady**'.

During the third term Thatcher continued the 'Thatcher revolution' by returning education, health care and housing to private control.

After winning three general elections, she was forced to resign in 1991 by members of her own party who criticized her attitude to the European Union. She was succeeded as Prime Minister by **John Major**. She was made a life peer in 1992.

M. Thatcher died on the 8th of April, 2013 in London.

Margaret Thatcher is certainly an outstanding figure in Britain's political life. According to political observers, she brought long-needed changes to British government and society.

The Modern Political History of Great Britain

Theresa May (2016-2019)



T. May is an Anglican and worships regularly. She has stated that her faith "is part of me. It is part of who I am and therefore how I approach things."

Following the resignation of David Cameron, Theresa May became Britain's first female Prime Minister since Margaret Thatcher and the first tasked to lead the country out of the European Union after its historic Brexit referendum, which was held in June 2016. She held the post until stepping down in July 2019. A member of the Conservative Party, T. May had originally voted to stay in the E.U., despite having

reservations. Previously, she was appointed Home Secretary in 2010 and was elected MP (Member of Parliament) of Maidenhead in 1997.

Theresa Mary May was born on October 1, 1956 in Eastbourne, Sussex. Her father was a vicar for the Church of England and her mother was a housewife. May attended state-run primary and grammar schools and briefly went to Catholic school. She studied geography at St. Hugh's College at Oxford University and earned her B.A. in 1977. It was during this time she had met her husband Phillip May and the two married in 1980.

After graduation, May spent the next 20 years working in the financial sector before making her way into the education and political sectors in the mid 1980s and '90s. However, her political ambitions were clear from the start. A university friend, Pat Frankland, told the BBC in 2011: "I cannot remember a time when she did not have political ambitions. I well remember, at the time, that she did want to become the first woman prime minister and she was quite irritated when Margaret Thatcher got there first."

Political Career

In 2002 May was appointed as the first female Chairman of the Conservative Party and was famously quoted as saying it must no longer be known as the "Nasty Party." She served in a number of Shadow Cabinets before becoming Home Secretary in 2010, and also became the Minister for Women and Equalities, a post she vacated in 2012. As the longest-serving Home Secretary in six decades, she was known for her work on police reform and pursuing stricter drug and immigration policies.

To the shock of the world and to almost half of its own citizens, the U.K. voted to exit the European Union in June 2016 — an event which is referred to as the "Brexit" (Britain Exit) referendum. (May was known to be a "Euroskeptic.")

After Prime Minister David Cameron announced his resignation, May announced her candidacy for the Conservative Party and quickly emerged as its frontrunner, receiving 50 percent of the Parliamentary votes alone amid the other candidates.

Prime Minister

May was sworn in as Britain's second female Prime Minister on July 13, 2016, and the Queen's 13th Prime Minister following ceremonial overtures. She was the first Prime Minister to enter 10 Downing Street without children. She told Vogue: "It's one of those things. We didn't have children. You just get on with life."

In early December, a report surfaced that MI5, the British domestic intelligence agency, had foiled a terrorist plot to assassinate May. According to the report, two men were planning to use improvised explosives to blow up the gate at the prime minister's residence and to kill her in the ensuing chaos. The two suspects were arrested in late November.

Her time as Prime Minister was turbulent. With Brexit looming and two terror attacks in the UK. That's why T. May received plenty of criticism. In March, she signed the Article 50 letter that started the process towards Britain leaving the European Union.

On 23 May the Conservative Party lost 15 seats in the European Parliament, achieved a 9% vote share, and nursed what many called the worst nationwide election result in their 185-year history. The next day, T. May announced that she would resign as leader of the Conservative and Unionist Party.

May formally stepped down from her post on July 24, 2019, giving way to new Prime Minister Boris Johnson.

Boris Johnson (2019-2022)



Boris Johnson, a prominent figure in British politics, has had a diverse and eventful career. From his early days as a journalist to his tenure as the Prime Minister of the United Kingdom, Johnson's journey has been marked by ups and downs, triumphs and controversies.

Early Life and Career as a Journalist

Boris Johnson was born on June 19, 1964, in New York City, USA. He spent his childhood in various locations including New York City, London, and Brussels. After attending boarding school in England, he received a scholarship to Eton College, one of the most prestigious private schools in the country. Later, he pursued his studies in classics at Balliol College, Oxford, where he became the president of the Oxford Union.

Following his education, Johnson began his career as a journalist. He started as a reporter for The Times in 1987 but was dismissed after fabricating a quotation. Undeterred, he joined The Daily Telegraph,

where he worked as a correspondent covering the European Community and later as an assistant editor. In 1994, Johnson became a political columnist for *The Spectator*, a renowned magazine, and eventually became its editor in 1999.

Entry into Politics and Election to Parliament

In 1997, Boris Johnson made his first foray into politics by running as the Conservative candidate for Clwyd South in the House of Commons. However, he faced defeat at the hands of the Labour Party incumbent. Despite this setback, Johnson's charisma and wit made him a favorite on British television talk shows, ensuring his visibility in the political arena.

Undeterred by his initial defeat, Johnson ran for Parliament again in 2001, this time winning the seat in the Henley-on-Thames constituency. His popularity continued to rise, and he became one of the most recognizable politicians in the country. However, his political career was not without controversy, as he had to apologize to the city of Liverpool for an insensitive editorial published in *The Spectator*.

Mayor of London

One of the defining moments of Boris Johnson's career came in 2008 when he ran for Mayor of London. In a closely contested election, Johnson emerged victorious, defeating the incumbent Labour Party mayor, Ken Livingstone. During his tenure as mayor, Johnson focused on issues such as crime and transportation, successfully leaving his mark on the city.

In 2012, Johnson was reelected as mayor, despite the Conservative Party suffering losses in other local elections. His win was seen as a bright spot for the party, and it solidified his position as a prominent figure in British politics. Throughout his time as mayor, Johnson continued his career as an author, writing books on various topics, including history and politics.

Return to Parliament and Role in the Brexit Referendum

In 2015, Boris Johnson returned to Parliament as the MP. He also took on the role of leader of the "Leave" campaign in the Brexit referendum, which took place on June 23, 2016. Johnson's support for Brexit was a pivotal moment in the campaign, as his endorsement swayed public opinion in favor of leaving the European Union.

Following the referendum, Johnson's political career took an unexpected turn. He was appointed as the Foreign Secretary by then-Prime Minister Theresa May. In this role, Johnson defended May's decision to join the United States and France in strategic air strikes against the Syrian regime. However, he faced criticism for his handling of a nerve agent attack on a former Russian intelligence officer in Salisbury, England.

Prime Minister of the United Kingdom

In July 2019, Boris Johnson achieved his long-held ambition of becoming the Prime Minister of the United Kingdom. He succeeded Theresa May, who had struggled to navigate the complexities of Brexit.

Johnson's leadership style and approach to governance were characterized by his commitment to "getting Brexit done" and his promise to deliver on the referendum result.

During his tenure as Prime Minister, Johnson faced numerous challenges, including the COVID-19 pandemic, which posed significant health and economic risks to the country. Although his government implemented a successful vaccine rollout, Johnson faced criticism for his handling of the crisis, particularly regarding lockdown parties and allegations of rule-breaking at 10 Downing Street.

Despite his achievements, Johnson's premiership was marred by controversies and political turbulence. He faced several no-confidence votes, resignations from his cabinet, and divisions within his own party. In September 2022, Johnson announced his resignation as Prime Minister, marking the end of his time in office.

Legacy and Impact

Boris Johnson's political journey has left a lasting impact on British politics. His role in the Brexit referendum and his subsequent leadership as Prime Minister have shaped the country's trajectory and relationship with the European Union. His charismatic persona and unorthodox style of leadership have made him a divisive figure, admired by some for his authenticity and ability to connect with the public, and criticized by others for his perceived lack of attention to detail and disregard for norms and conventions.

As Johnson's legacy continues to unfold, future prime ministers will have the opportunity to learn from his successes and failures. The importance of governing effectively, prioritizing competence over loyalty in cabinet appointments, and upholding the integrity of the office of the Prime Minister are valuable lessons that can be drawn from Johnson's political journey.

In conclusion, Boris Johnson's political career has been marked by ambition, controversy, and significant milestones. From his early days as a journalist to his tenure as Prime Minister, Johnson's journey has left an indelible mark on British politics. Whether his legacy is viewed as transformative or tarnished will be a subject of debate for years to come.

Rishi Sunak (2022-2024)



Rishi Sunak (born May 12, 1980, Southampton, England) is a British politician and financier who became the leader of the Conservative Party and prime minister of the United Kingdom in October 2022. He resigned as prime minister in July 2024 and was replaced by Labour Party leader Keir Starmer after Labour won a landslide victory in a general election. Previously Sunak had served as chancellor of the Exchequer (2020–22).

Early life

Sunak was born into a family with immigrant roots. His grandparents emigrated from Punjab, in northwestern India, to East Africa, where his mother and father were born in Tanzania and Kenya, respectively. They met and married after their families migrated in the 1960s to Southampton in southern England. Sunak's father became a general practitioner for the National Health Service. His mother, a pharmacist, owned and operated a small pharmacy, for which Sunak, the eldest of their three children, would eventually keep the books. Later, during his political career, Sunak would draw parallels between his experiences working in the family business and the values he gained from them and those of Conservative Party icon Margaret Thatcher, the daughter of a grocer.

As a result of his parents' sacrifices and saving to fund his education, Sunak was able to attend Winchester College, the exclusive private school that has produced no fewer than six chancellors of the Exchequer. In addition to becoming "head boy" at Winchester, Sunak was the editor of the school's newspaper. During summer vacations he waited tables at a Southampton Indian restaurant. Sunak went on to study philosophy, politics, and economics (the degree obtained by many future prime ministers) at Lincoln College, Oxford. There he was president of the Oxford Trading & Investment Society, which provided students with opportunities to learn about financial markets and global trading. While at Oxford, Sunak also had an internship at the headquarters of the Conservative Party.

After graduating from Oxford in 2001, Sunak became an analyst for Goldman Sachs, working for the investment banking company until 2004. As a Fulbright scholar, he then pursued an MBA at Stanford University, where he met his future wife, Akshata Murthy, daughter of Narayana Murthy, an Indian billionaire and cofounder of technology giant Infosys. Returning to the United Kingdom in 2006, Sunak took a job with The Children's Investment Fund Management (TCI). In 2009 Sunak left TCI to join another hedge fund, Thelema Partners. That year he married Murthy; they would have two daughters.

Political career

In 2010 Sunak began working for the Conservative Party. During this period he also became involved with Policy Exchange, a leading Conservative think tank, for which he became head of the Black and Minority Ethnic (BME) Research Unit in 2014. That year Policy Exchange published *A Portrait of Modern Britain*, a pamphlet that Sunak wrote with Saratha Rajeswaran, deputy head of the BME unit. In 2014 Sunak was chosen as the Conservative Party's candidate for the House of Commons representing Richmond in North Yorkshire, a safe Conservative seat in the north of England

long held by onetime party leader (1997–2001) William Hague. In May 2015 Sunak was elected by a commanding majority. He came into office a Euroskeptic and firmly in the “leave” camp on the issue of Brexit, which he said would make the United Kingdom “freer, fairer, and more prosperous.” He would be reelected to Parliament in 2017 and 2019, and he voted three times in favor of Prime Minister Theresa May’s Brexit plans.

From 2015 to 2017 he was a member of the Environment, Food and Rural Affairs Select Committee and parliamentary private secretary at the Department for Business, Energy and Industrial Strategy. In January 2018 he was appointed to his first ministerial post as undersecretary of state at the Ministry of Housing, Communities and Local Government. Sunak became a vocal supporter of Boris Johnson’s pursuit of the party’s leadership, and, when Johnson became leader and prime minister, he rewarded Sunak with a promotion, appointing him chief secretary to the Treasury in July 2019.

During Sunak’s tenure as second-in-command at the Treasury ministry, tensions were rising between his boss, Chancellor of the Exchequer Sajid Javid, and Johnson. When Javid resigned in February 2020, Johnson replaced him with Sunak, who, at age 39, became the fourth youngest person ever to hold that position. Almost immediately Sunak was faced with the manifold challenges brought about by the arrival in Britain of the COVID-19 global pandemic. As the British economy was clobbered by the shutdowns imposed by the government in an attempt to stem the spread of the coronavirus SARS-CoV-2, the cause of COVID-19, Sunak employed the powers of his office to try to offset the economic and human damage. He instituted a broad economic-support program that dedicated some £330 billion (\$400 billion) in emergency funds for businesses and salary subsidies for workers aimed at job retention and easing the burden of the lockdown for individuals and companies alike. Those rescue programs were widely popular, and the polished, poised Sunak became the welcome face of the government at daily press conferences where the prime minister appeared less composed.

Sunak’s “Eat Out to Help Out” scheme, aimed at supporting restaurants and pubs with government-subsidized food and drinks, was viewed by some observers as a rousing success, but critics pointed to it as having likely played a significant role in the emergence of a catastrophic spike in COVID-19 cases in autumn 2020. Nonetheless, the portrait of Sunak that arose during the pandemic was that of a superslick, social-media savvy, immaculately dressed, handsome, but down-to-earth politician. “Disly Rishi” was named “Britain’s sexiest MP” in 2020.

Sunak’s gleaming brand was tarnished, however, by a series of disclosures in April 2022. Perhaps most damaging was the revelation that his wife, as an Indian citizen and non-domiciled U.K. resident, had claimed a tax status that allowed her to avoid paying British taxes on her overseas income, which may have saved her as much as £20 million (\$24 million) in U.K. taxes over a roughly seven-and-a-half-year period. While not illegal, the maneuver cast a bad light on Sunak, and Murthy was quick to revise her tax status. Sunak’s patriotism was also called into question when it was revealed that he had held on to a

green card for U.S. residency until late October 2021, which seemed to suggest a desire to keep his options open. Finally, in April 2022 Sunak was fined by the police for having been among the guests at a birthday party for Johnson at his office in 2020 in violation of the government's rules against social gatherings at that stage of the pandemic. Sunak claimed that his appearance at the party was inadvertent and the result of having appeared early for a meeting with the prime minister.

With Johnson remaining as a caretaker prime minister until the party could choose a replacement for him, the parliamentary party (sitting Conservative MPs) set about the series of votes that incrementally winnowed the field of candidates for the leadership from eight to two. At the end of that process, Sunak and Foreign Secretary Liz Truss remained as the final duo whose names were submitted for a vote by the party's whole membership.

Sunak stood to be the first person of color and first Hindu to lead Britain. When the results of the election were announced on September 5, Sunak came up short, taking 42.6 percent of the vote, compared with 57.4 percent for Truss, who became party leader.

Premiership

This time around, 100 nominations from Conservative MPs were required for candidate eligibility. Because there were 357 Conservative MPs, at most only three candidates could advance for consideration. Again the two finalists were then to be put to a vote by the party membership. Sunak, who still enjoyed broad support among MPs, was the early favorite. By early October 24 more than half the MPs had already committed to nominate Sunak. He took office as the first U.K. **prime minister of color** on October 24, 2022.

A devoted Hindu, Sunak is known for taking his oath of office on the Bhagavad Gita and for his public commemoration of the festival of Diwali. Thanks to his wife's family fortune, Sunak became the richest prime minister in U.K. history, with a reported net worth of £730 million as of May 2022. At the time, his properties included a mansion in Kirby Sigston, Yorkshire; two residences in west London; and a beach penthouse in Santa Monica, California.

Along with his professed interests in cricket, football and overall fitness, Sunak often cites his love for *Star Wars* on social media and reportedly owns a collection of lightsabers.

On the afternoon of 22 May 2024, Sunak announced that he had asked the King to call a general election for 4 July 2024, surprising his own MPs. Though Sunak had the option to wait until December 2024 to call the election, he said that he decided on the date because he believed that the economy was improving, and that "falling inflation and net migration figures would reinforce the Conservatives' election message of 'sticking to the plan'". Sunak sought to rebuild the Conservative's reputation through campaigning on stabilising the economy, the Rwanda asylum plan, further strengthening the State Pension, and introducing National Service. He released the Conservative manifesto Clear Plan. Bold

Action. Secure Future. on 11 June, addressing the economy, taxes, welfare, expanding free childcare, education, healthcare, environment, energy, transport, and crime. On 6 June 2024, the 80th anniversary of D-Day, Sunak was heavily criticised for leaving commemoration events early to do an interview with ITV, including by veterans. Sunak apologised three times over the following week.

Labour won a landslide victory in the general election, ending 14 years of Conservative government. Sunak conceded the election on 5 July. In his resignation speech before tendering his resignation to the King, Sunak apologised to Conservative voters and candidates for the party's heavy defeat, and announced his intention to resign as party leader once a new leader is elected. He also offered support to the incoming prime minister Keir Starmer, saying he was "a decent, public-spirited man" he respected and expressed hope he would be successful.

After Starmer succeeded Sunak as prime minister, Sunak immediately became Leader of the Opposition and formed his shadow cabinet on 8 July.

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

1. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. What is the main function of the executive branch of the government?
2. Where is the residence of the Prime Minister?
3. Who appoints Prime Minister? How does Prime Minister act?
4. What is the Cabinet? Who are the main members of the Cabinet? How are they chosen?
5. What are the main reasons for a modern PM's dominance?
6. What are the main functions of the Privy Council?
7. What does 'shadow cabinet' mean? What are the main functions of this cabinet?
8. Why did Sir William Walpole become outstanding British politician?
9. Why is Winston Churchill remembered as one of Britain's greatest statesmen?
10. Why is M/ Thatcher an outstanding figure in Britain's political life?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

1. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

Резиденция премьер-министров Великобритании

1. Множество известных ног прошли через вестибюль резиденции премьер министра Великобритании: от мировых лидеров до спортивных героев. Но чаще всего им пользуются сотрудники премьер-министра, которые приходят сюда каждый день, чтобы работать среди бесчисленных коридоров и лестниц которые выются вокруг здания.

2. У премьер-министра нет ключей к Downing №10, но всегда есть кто-то на дежурстве, чтобы впустить его.

3. Разработанный Чиппендейлом **стул** в холле, использовался дежурными в дни, когда они охраняли резиденцию на улице. У него есть ящик в нижней части, куда помещались горячие угли, чтобы сохранять для охранников тепло холодными ночами. Царапины на коже вызваны их пистолетами.

4. Слева от стула в зале стоят высокие **часы с маятником**, сделанные Бенсоном. Их перезвоны раздражали Уинстона Черчилля так, что ему отключили музыкальное оборудование.

5. Рядом с дверью **сундук** для путешественника **герцога Веллингтона**. Считается, что этот сундук находился с Веллингтоном в сражении при Ватерлоо в 1815 году.

6. Одним из важных дополнений, которые были сделаны в резиденции во время премьерства Роберта Уолпоула в 18-м веке, стала **центральная лестница**, которая ведет в государственные Комнаты.

7. Интерьер парадной лестницы оформлен портретами. Картины, изображающие каждого премьер-министра Великобритании, вывешены на стенах в хронологическом порядке, новые должностные лица наверху, общие фотографии членов прошлых Кабинетов и Имперских Конференций внизу.

8. Уинстон Черчилль — единственный премьер-министр, два портрета которого, висят на стенах лестницы. Одна из фотографий Черчилля — самая известная. Это была очень длинная фотосессия, во время которой Черчилль беспрерывно курил сигару; в конечном счете фотограф просто выхватил сигару изо рта премьер-министра и сделал фотографию. Это объясняет сварливый взгляд Черчилля.

9. **Белая гостиная** — одна из комнат резиденции, которая использовалась до середины двадцатого века как частные покои премьер-министра. В ней находятся работы одного из самых любимых английских пейзажистов девятнадцатого века, Дж М В Тернера. Интерьер гостиной часто используется в качестве фона для телевизионных интервью и конференц-зала.

10. Потолок Белой гостиной выполнен в стиле загородного дома 18-го века. Он включает четыре символа Британских островов — нарцисс, роза, трилистник и чертополох.

11. В настоящее время совещания **Кабинета министров** проходят каждый вторник, но раньше они обычно проводились по четвергам утром.

12. **Овальный стол** был введен Гарольдом Макмилланом в пятидесятых годах прошлого века и разработан с целью позволить премьер-министру видеть всех. Никто не сидит непосредственно напротив премьер-министра. Члены Кабинета министров рассаживаются по старшинству на места, обозначенные табличкой.

13. Определённое пространство, занимает библиотека. Уходящие в отставку премьер-министры и члены правительства жертвуют в нее книги. Эта традиция была начата Рэмси Макдональдом в 1935 году.

14. **Комната с колоннами** является самой большой из трех гостиных в резиденции и используется, для подписания международных соглашений или во время больших приемов.
15. Жемчужиной интерьера Колонной комнаты является поразительный персидский ковер, точная копия ковра 16-го века, который хранится в Музее Виктории и Альберта.
16. Комната с колоннами, как говорят, посещается призраком. Несколько сотрудников резиденции, видели или, слышали «леди», женщину, одетую в длинное платье и жемчуга.
17. **Государственная парадная столовая** построена в 1827 году. Эта самая большая комната в резиденции, высотой в два этажа, обшита до потолка дубовыми панелями Ее величественный интерьер добавляет важности происходящим здесь событиям. Она используется для устройства официальных обедов во время приема иностранных делегаций и пресс-конференций премьер-министра.

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it.

UNIT III

HISTORICAL PAST OF THE USA

AMERICAN GOVERNMENT

Lesson 1

A Brief Overview of the American History

15th-16th c.c.

Old World meets the New World

The existence of the New World, the Americas remained a mystery to most of Europe until the 15th century. Many European countries were in search for a northwest passage to reach East Asia instead of the long silk route or Silk Road.



If you ask “Who discovered America?”, the answer that you will usually receive is “**Christopher Columbus**” because the Italian adventurer and explorer named Christopher Columbus was the first European to discover America in 1492. He had persuaded King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain to pay for his attempt to find a new route to Asia by crossing the Atlantic Ocean. In 1492, Columbus went on the 1st of four voyages to the new world, all of them supported by the Spanish crown. He had reached what is now the United States during his second voyage arriving in Puerto Rico in 1493. When he arrived

at one of the Caribbean islands, he thought he had found the coast of Asia and continued to believe this for the rest of his life.

John Cabot, a fellow Italian, received his financing for his voyages from the British monarchy in 1497 explored portions of the east Coast of North America.

Why did European geographers give the name America to the lands that Columbus discovered? Why didn't they name them instead after Columbus?

The reason is that to the end of his life Columbus believed that his discoveries were part of Asia. The man who did most to correct this mistaken idea was Amerigo Vespucci, an Italian sailor from the city of Florence. Europeans called America “**the New World**”.

Native Americans were the first inhabitants of this rich land. It is not definitively known how or when the Native Americans first settled the Americas and the present-day United States. They are

believed to have come over from the Eurasian continent by way of the area we know today as Alaska and Canada.

17th Century

Spanish, Dutch and French colonization

These were followed by expeditions by other European countries hoping to colonize other parts of the New World. **Spain** sent expeditions beginning in the Appalachian Mountains all the way west to the Grand Canyon. Hernando De Soto and Francisco Vazquez de Coronado explored the rest of the land in 1540. Coronado recruited native Mexican Americans to help in the exploration of the new world reaching the Arizona-Mexican border. St. Augustine in Florida had the first permanent settlement on the continent. Other Spanish settlements spread throughout the new frontier, these included places like present day Albuquerque, Los Angeles, San Antonio, San Diego, Santa Fe, San Francisco, and even Tucson in Arizona.

Entering the 17th century, **the Dutch** claimed the territory that was found along the Hudson River Valley. Despite being Calvinists and building the Reformed Church in America, the Dutch were tolerant of other religions and cultures. Notable Americans of Dutch descent include Martin Van Buren, Theodore Roosevelt, Franklin D. Roosevelt, Eleanor Roosevelt.

France colonized much of North America between 1534 through 1763. Most of the French settlers made Quebec their home early on. Their main means of commerce was fur trading with Indian tribes who in turn became their allies against the British. France's territories were divided into five colonies, Acadia (part of present day Quebec), Canada, Hudson Bay, Louisiana, and Newfoundland.

Europeans brought horses, cattle, and hogs to the Americas and, in turn, took back to Europe maize, turkeys, potatoes, tobacco, beans, and squash. Many explorers and early settlers died after being exposed to new diseases in the Americas. The effects of new Eurasian diseases carried by the colonists, especially smallpox and measles, were much worse for the Native Americans, as they had no immunity to them. They suffered epidemics and died in very large numbers, usually before large-scale European settlement began. Their societies were disrupted and hollowed out by the scale of deaths.

British colonization



A little known fact about colonial America is that half of European immigrants, who came, arrived as what was called “indentured servants.” What this means is that a person is contracted to work over a period of time determined by the employer, often in an unskilled capacity. The “servant” in turn receives food, lodging, clothing, and if necessary, transportation during their

period of service. No wages are paid to them. These often are men and women under 21 years of age.

In the year 1607, Jamestown, Virginia is where the English first established a colony, mainly a colony composed of businessmen and their families. Perhaps the most famous story ever told about the colonization of America is that of the pilgrims and **“The Mayflower”**. The pilgrims were composed of dissenters and separatists from England, all one hundred and two passengers reached Plymouth harbor in 1620. Their original destination of “The Mayflower”, the ship they were riding on, was the Hudson River; at that time was part of the Virginia colony.

Their hopes were connected with the promises of the Bible about the land "of honey and milk", and America was thought to be this land.

18th -Century

Social and Economic Developments

In the 1700s the British colonies grew rapidly in population and wealth. A formerly crude society acquired a polished and numerous elite. Trade and cities flourished. The 250,000 settlers who had lived in the mainland colonies to the south of Canada in 1700 became 2,250,000 by 1775 and would grow to 5,300,000 by 1800.

People who came to America were mostly farmers, who wanted to exploit new lands. Each of the 13 American colonies had a slightly different governmental structure. Typically a colony was ruled by a governor appointed from London. By the 18th century, the American colonies were growing very rapidly as a result of low death rates along with ample supplies of land and food. The colonies were richer than most parts of Britain, and attracted a steady flow of immigrants, especially teenagers who arrived as indentured servants. The tobacco and rice plantations imported African slaves for labor from the British colonies in the West Indies, and by the 1770s African slaves comprised a fifth of the American population.

Slaves from Africa were used in small numbers in the colonies from about 1619. After British merchants joined the Dutch in the slave trade later in the 17th century, prices tumbled and increasing numbers of black people were transported into the southern colonies to be used for plantation labor. Slaves were also used in the northern colonies, but in far fewer numbers. The survival rates as well as birthrates tended to be high for slaves brought to the North American mainland colonies--in contrast to those transported to the West Indies or to South America.

The expansion of slavery was the most fateful event of the pre- Revolutionary years. Virginia had only about 16,000 slaves in 1700; by 1770 it held more than 187,000, or almost half the population of the colony. In low country South Carolina, with its rice and indigo plantations, only 25,000 out of a total population of 100,000 were white in 1775. Fearful whites mounted slave patrols and exacted savage penalties upon transgression in order to maintain black passivity.

Meanwhile, on the basis of abundant slave labor, the world of great plantations emerged, creating sharp distinctions in wealth among whites. Southern society was dominated by the aristocracy; however, whites of all classes were united in their fear of blacks. Miscegenation was common, especially where slaves were most numerous, and mulattos were regarded as black, not white. An almost total absence of government in this sparsely settled, rural southern environment resulted in complete license on the part of owners in the treatment of their slaves. Paradoxically, the ideal of liberty--of freedom from all restraints--was powerful in the southern white mind.

The question of independence from Britain did not arise as long as the colonies needed British military support against the French and Spanish powers; those threats were gone by 1765. London regarded the American colonies as existing for the benefit of the mother country. This policy is known as mercantilism.

American Revolution 1775–1783

The American Revolutionary War (1775-1783), also known as the American War of



Independence, was a war between the Kingdom of Great Britain and thirteen British colonies on the North American continent. The war was the culmination of the political American Revolution, whereby the colonists overthrew British rule. The United States was able to overcome the British forces through the help of France and Spain.

In 1775, Revolutionaries seized control of each of the thirteen colonial governments, set up the Second Continental Congress, and formed a Continental Army. The following year, on July 4, 1776, they formally declared their independence as a new nation, the United States of America. This became the rallying cry for the newly formed United States against the British government. The declaration and signing took place in Philadelphia. The ideals of this new nation were based on liberal enlightenment ideas and republican doctrine. Both ideals are dependent on one another. The liberal enlightenment is described by what the 3rd President of the United States and a principal drafter of the declaration, Thomas Jefferson, as “...that all men are created equal, that they are endowed_by their Creator with certain unalienable rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness.”

Republicanism reflects these values written on the declaration stressing liberty and inalienable rights at the very core of this belief. This belief basically states that the people are sovereign, requiring civic duty, opposed elitism, and apprehensive towards corruption. They did not recognize the rule of kings based on heritage.

People have tried to identify who actually formed the words written in the declaration of independence; Thomas Jefferson explained in 1825 that the declaration did not contain anything original attributed to one man. Everything written on the document, include sentiments by those who supported the American Revolt. There were fifty-six signers on the Declaration of Independence.

The American Revolutionary War ended in 1783. Immediately thereafter, a time of prosperity took place. The new national government addressed matters such as the western territories which eventually became US territories and became states beginning in 1791.

George Washington became the first president of the United States in 1789 under a new constitution. He ran for president as an independent. 1791 was the year that the United States Bill of Rights came into effect.

From 1778 onward, other European powers would fight on the American side in the war. Meanwhile, Native Americans and African Americans served on both sides. Throughout the war, the British were able to use their naval superiority to capture and occupy coastal cities, but control of the countryside (where 90% of the population lived) largely eluded them due to their relatively small land army. In early 1778, shortly after an American victory at Saratoga, France entered the war against Britain; Spain and the Netherlands joined as allies of France over the next two years. The Treaty of Paris in 1783 ended the war and recognized the sovereignty of the United States over the territory bounded by what is now Canada to the north, Florida to the south, and the Mississippi River to the west. The war of American independence was a war that America could not have survived without French assistance.

In addition, Britain had significant military disadvantages. Distance was a major problem: most troops and supplies had to be shipped across the Atlantic Ocean. Ocean travel meant that British communications were always about two months out of date: by the time British generals in America received their orders from London, the military situation had usually changed. Suppressing a rebellion in America also posed other problems. Since the colonies covered a large area and had not been united before the war, there was no central area of strategic importance. In Europe, the capture of a capital often meant the end of a war; in America, when the British seized cities such as New York and Philadelphia, the war continued unabated. Furthermore, the large size of the colonies meant that the British lacked the manpower to control them by force. Once any area had been occupied, troops had to be kept there or the Revolutionaries would regain control, and these troops were thus unavailable for further offensive operations. The British had sufficient troops to defeat the Americans on the battlefield but not enough. This combination of factors led ultimately to the downfall of British rule in America and the rise of the revolutionaries' own independent nation, the United States of America.

19th - Century

The American Civil War 1861-1865



1776-1783 created the United States, the Civil War of 1861-1865 determined what kind of nation it would be. The war resolved two fundamental questions left unresolved by the revolution: whether the United States was to be a dissolvable confederation of sovereign states or an indivisible nation with a sovereign national government; and whether this nation, born of a declaration that all men were created with an equal right to liberty, would continue to exist

as the largest slaveholding country in the world.

Northern victory in the war preserved the United States as one nation and ended the institution of slavery that had divided the country from its beginning. But these achievements came at the cost of 625,000 lives--nearly as many American soldiers as died in all the other wars in which this country has fought combined. The American Civil War was the largest and most destructive conflict in the Western world between the end of the Napoleonic Wars in 1815 and the onset of World War I in 1914.

The Civil War started because of uncompromising differences between the free and slave states over the power of the national government to prohibit slavery in the territories that had not yet become states. When **Abraham Lincoln** won election in 1860 as the first Republican president on a platform pledging to keep slavery out of the territories, seven slave states in the deep South seceded and formed a new nation, **the Confederate States of America**. The incoming Lincoln administration and most of the Northern people refused to recognize the legitimacy of secession. They feared that it would discredit democracy and create a fatal precedent that would eventually fragment the no-longer United States into several small, squabbling countries.

The event that triggered war came at Fort Sumter in Charleston Bay on April 12, 1861. Claiming this United States fort as their own, the Confederate army on that day opened fire on the federal garrison and forced it to lower the American flag in surrender. Lincoln called out the militia to suppress this "insurrection." Four more slave states seceded and joined the Confederacy. By the end of 1861 nearly a million armed men confronted each other along a line stretching 1200 miles from Virginia to Missouri. Several battles had already taken place--near Manassas Junction in Virginia, in the mountains of western Virginia where Union victories paved the way for creation of the new state of West Virginia, at Wilson's Creek in Missouri, at Cape Hatteras in North Carolina, and at Port Royal in South Carolina where the Union navy established a base for a blockade to shut off the Confederacy's access to the outside world.

But the real fighting began in 1862. Huge battles foreshadowed even bigger campaigns and battles in subsequent years. By 1864 the original Northern goal of a limited war to restore the Union had given way to a new strategy of "total war" to destroy the Old South and its basic institution of slavery and to give the restored Union a "new birth of freedom," as President Lincoln put it in his address at Gettysburg to dedicate a cemetery for Union soldiers killed in the battle there.

By the spring of 1865 all the principal Confederate armies surrendered, and when Union cavalry captured the fleeing Confederate President Jefferson Davis in Georgia on May 10, 1865, resistance collapsed and the war ended. The long, painful process of rebuilding a united nation free of slavery began.

20th – 21st Centuries

World War I

America maintained a position of neutrality while World War I raged in Europe. The entry of the United States of America into 1st World War did not take place until 1917 when a disagreement emerged with Germany regarding the use of submarines. The entry of the United States into this war led to the creation of the selected services act in which nearly three million men had been drafted. This enabled the United States to send ten thousand soldiers daily to the battlefield in France.

Towards the end of the First World War, the United States gained stature militarily and economically. They were recognized as a world power. The revolution in Russia sent shockwaves throughout America, the fear of communism became real to people of the United States and what it would do to their way of life.

The 1920s was perhaps the most decadent period in the history of the United States, rivaled only later by the 1960s. This was a period whose ripple effects can still be felt to this day. A period wherein; prohibition was the topic of conversation; the Immigration Act of 1924 was passed, this act limited the number of people who would be admitted as immigrants; and the birth of the Jazz age gave the youth of that decade something to talk about.

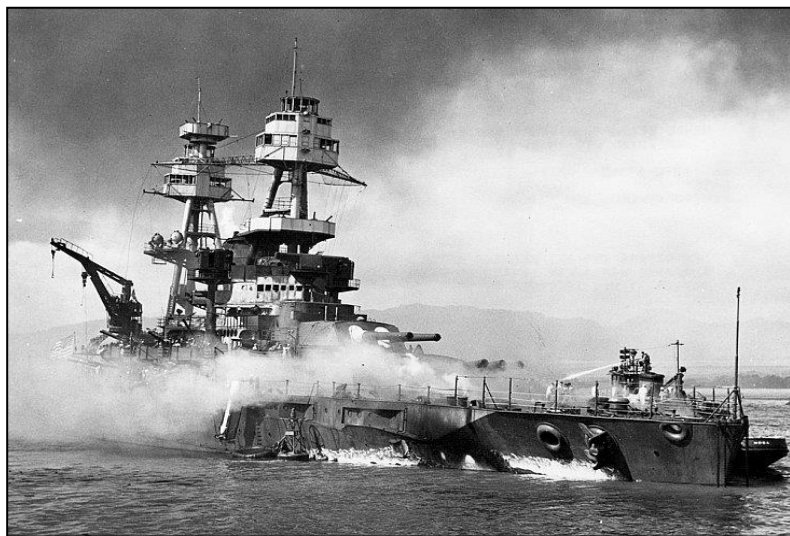
Despite a "roaring" start to the 1920s, the United States was not able to sustain the roar. By October of 1929, the stock market crashed. A worldwide depression ensued leading to what is known as the **Great Depression**. Between 1929 and 1933, nearly 25 percent unemployment was experienced in the United States. Nearly every industry, especially in manufacturing, had reached a point where in their output had been reduced to one-third.

World War II

While the United States and the rest of the world were dealing with their economic woes, Europe was being besieged by the rumblings from Nazi Germany and Fascists from Italy, and that of imperial Japan flexing their muscles in East Asia. The French and the British continued to exercise appeasement to avoid war throughout Europe. The United States passed legislation that was meant to prevent America

from getting involved with conflicts outside their shores; this piece of legislation is known as the **Neutrality Acts**.

This changed when Germany invaded Poland in 1939; this was the beginning of World War II. President Roosevelt called the U.S. the arsenal of democracy, promising financial and supplies, in the form of munitions, in support of the Allies in Europe. No troop support was promised. In an attempt to



keep the United States from exercising their power in the Pacific, in December 8, 1941, Japan attacked **Pearl Harbor**. This pushed the United States into the fracas, motivated by revenge.

Primarily, the Allies were composed of Britain, China, the Soviet Union, the United States, and other countries like Australia, Belgium, Canada, Brazil, New Zealand and more. These fought the forces of Germany, Italy, and

Japan which had been known as the Axis powers.

During the war, the economy of the United States improved. The War helped take the economy out of the doldrums of the Great Depression. Full time employment suddenly became a reality and not just wishful thinking. A majority of the labor force in America had a role to play during the wartime efforts, including black people and women.

Russia recognized the United States on October 28, 1803, and diplomatic relations between the United States and Russia were formally established in 1809. Diplomatic relations were interrupted following the 1917 Bolshevik Revolution. On December 6, 1917, President Woodrow Wilson instructed all American diplomatic representatives in Russia to refrain from any direct communication with representatives of the Bolshevik Government. Although diplomatic relations were never formally severed, the United States refused to recognize or have any formal relations with the Bolshevik/Soviet governments until 1933. Normal diplomatic relations were resumed on November 16, 1933.

With the eventual victory of the allies over the axis of powers, another kind of war brewed behind the scenes amongst the nations. The United States' position after the war made them a superpower and by a bipartisan vote decided to join the United Nations. The significance of this action is that this is the first time the United States has broken from their long held tradition of acting unilateral, or being isolationists.

The underlying reason for the move may have been an attempt to prevent the dreaded expansion of communism throughout Europe by the Soviets. The United States in 1949 formed the NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization) which was meant to safeguard countries from unwarranted attacks (from

the Soviet Union specifically) from other countries. An attack on one member of NATO would be considered an attack on all members. Members of NATO included the United Kingdom, the USA, Italy, France, Iceland, Canada, Portugal, and other signatories of the North Atlantic Treaty. Other countries later joined the organization. In response to NATO, the Soviet Union put together the Warsaw pact which was a compilation of other communist states in Eastern Europe. Thus **the Cold War** had its beginnings.

The years following the World War II gave birth to events we often hear from the history books and the history channel. Cold war battles were fought through proxy wars which includes the Korean War in 1950 and the Vietnam War in 1955. In a battle for supremacy in the area of technology and innovation, the United States officially joined the Space Race in 1957 after it saw the progress the soviets had made.

On December 25, 1991, the United States recognized the Russian Federation as the successor to the Soviet Union and established diplomatic relations on December 31, 1991.

The United States has long sought a full and constructive relationship with Russia. Following the dissolution of the Soviet Union in 1991, the United States adopted a bipartisan strategy to facilitate cooperation on global issues and promote foreign investment and trade. The United States supported Russia's integration into European and global institutions and a deepened bilateral partnership in security cooperation to reinforce the foundations of stability and predictability. The United States influenced the rest of the world in all aspects of everyday life not just economically, but also technologically, politically, militarily, socially, and culturally.

Russia–United States relations is the bilateral relationship between the Russian Federation and the United States of America and their predecessor states. Relations between the United States and Russia has long been tense. The two nations' conflicting ideologies didn't become prominent, hopes of a benevolent relationship between the two world powers have slowly deteriorated. Despite this, Russia and the United States still agree on supporting a bilateral agenda to confront many problems.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- *hog* – боров, свинья
- *squash*. любое растение из рода тыквенных (тыква, кабачок)
- *maize* – кукуруза, маис
- *smallpox* – оспа
- *measles* – корь
- *to disrupt* – разрушать
- *to hollow out* – опустошать
- *indentured servant* – наёмный рабочий, подписавший контракт, договор на работу на определённый период
- *ample* – изобильный, достаточный
- *miscegenation* – смешение рас, браки между белыми и неграми

- restraint* – ограничение, лишение свободы
- rallying cry* – спланивающий боевой клич
- drafter* – составитель документов, проектов
- to endow* – создавать, обеспечивать
- unalienable* – неотчуждённый
- core* – сердцевина, центр
- elitism* – элитизм, аристократическое высокомерие
- to elude* – избегать, уклоняться, отступать
- unabated* – нестихающий
- to regain* – восстанавливать, возвращать
- consciousness* – сознание, понимание
- onset* – начало, наступление
- to pledge* – обещать, заверять
- to secede* – отделяться
- to discredit* – не доверять, дискредитировать
- to squabble* – ссориться, скандалить
- to trigger* – инициировать
- to surrender* – сдаваться
- insurrection* – восстание, бунт, мятеж
- to pave* – проложить путь
- to foreshadow* – предвещать, предрекать
- decadent* – упадочнический
- woe* – проблема
- to besiege* – осаждать, блокировать
- rumbling* – грохотание орудий
- to flex* – изгибать
- appeasement* – политика умиротворения
- munitions* – военное имущество, снаряжение
- fracas* – скандал
- axis* – ось
- doldrums* – хандра, депрессия
- unwarranted* – произвольный, незаконный
- signatory* – подписавшаяся сторона
- compilation* - объединение
- proxy* - полномочие действовать от имени другого лица 2) доверенность
- bilateral* – двусторонний
- to reset* - вновь устанавливать; восстанавливать,
- benevolent* - благожелательный, благосклонный
- agenda* - программа (работы) , план (мероприятий); повестка дня (собраний)
- discarding* - списание
- stockpiles* – резервы, запасы
- combating* - борьба
- palpable* – очевидный, явный

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Who discovered America? What did European geographers say?
2. Why did Europeans call America 'New World'?
3. Who were the first inhabitants of New World?

4. Who tried to colonize the New World from Europe?
5. How was British colonizing developing?
6. What were the British colonies like in the 18th century?
7. Why was the expansion of slavery the most fateful in the 18th century?
8. What was the real reason of the American Revolutionary War? How did it end?
9. How did independent nation appear?
10. Why is the Civil War the central event in America's historical consciousness?
11. Who was the first republican president?
12. How did the Civil War end?
13. What was a position of America while World War I raged in Europe?
14. Why was the 1920s the most decadent period in the history of the United States?
15. What pushed the United States into the World War II?
16. How can you characterize the Cold War?
17. How are Russia-United States relations developing nowadays?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

1. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. Первые люди появились в Америке 10-15 тысяч лет назад, попав на Аляску через замерзший или обмелевший Берингов пролив. Племена материковой части Северной Америки были разобщены и периодически враждовали друг с другом.
2. Европейских иммигрантов манили в Америку богатые природные ресурсы далекого континента, и его отдаленность от европейских религиозных догм и политических пристрастий.
3. На протяжении 75 лет после появления в 1607 году первой английской колонии Вирджиния возникло еще 12 колоний — Нью-Хемпшир, Массачусетс, Род-Айленд, Коннектикут, Нью-Йорк, Нью-Джерси, Пенсильвания, Делавэр, Мэриленд, Северная Каролина, Южная Каролина и Джорджия.
4. Начиная с середины XVII века Великобритания старалась установить полный контроль над экономическими операциями американских колоний, английские предприниматели равно как и английское правительство, было крайне не заинтересовано в развитии промышленности в колониях, а также в торговле колоний с кем бы то ни было кроме Британии.
5. Американская промышленность (главным образом в северных колониях) достигла значительных успехов. Особенно американские промышленники преуспели в постройке судов, что позволило быстро наладить торговлю с Вест-Индией и тем самым найти рынок сбыта для отечественной мануфактуры.

6. «Бостонское чаепитие» — это знаменитый бунт американских колонистов, когда они выбросили в гавань Бостона ящики с чаем в знак протеста против введённого Великобританией налога на чай.
7. В 1803 г. благодаря удачным действиям американских дипломатов между Северо-американскими Соединёнными штатами и Францией была заключена сделка, получившая название Луизианская покупка и позволившая Штатам практически удвоить свою территорию. На отошедших в пользу США по договору 1803 года территориях в настоящее время располагаются современные штаты: Арканзас, Миссури, Айова, Оклахома, Канзас, Небраска, южная часть штата Миннесота, большая часть штата Северная Дакота, практически весь штат Южная Дакота, северо-восточная часть штата Нью-Мексико, большая часть штата Монтана, часть штата Вайоминг, северная часть Техаса, восточная половина Колорадо, часть штата Луизиана, включая город Новый Орлеан.
8. Великая депрессия (англ. Great Depression) — продолжительный экономический кризис в мировой экономике, начавшийся в США в 1929 году, а затем и в других странах мира.
9. Великая депрессия изменила социальный облик Америки. средний класс оказался на грани исчезновения. Вчерашние «белые воротнички» торговали с лотков яблоками и чистили обувь. Бездомные почитали за благо попасть хотя бы на сутки в тюрьму за бродяжничество, чтобы получить кров и похлебку.
10. На шесть тысяч рабочих мест на стройках СССР претендовали 100 тыс. американцев. Многие из тех, кто получил работа в стране социализма, собирались покинуть родину навсегда.
11. Соединённые Штаты Америки вступили в Первую мировую войну 6 апреля 1917 года. До этого они сохраняли нейтралитет. За время войны в армию было призвано более 4 млн человек. США потеряли в Первой мировой войне 117 465 человек
12. Утром 7 декабря 1941 года 441 японских самолётов, взлетевших с шести авианосцев, напали на американскую военную базу Пёрл-Харбор. Было потоплено 4 линкора, 2 крейсера. Американцы потеряли 2403 человека.
13. Через шесть часов после нападения американским военным кораблям и подводным лодкам было приказано начать боевые действия в океане против Японии. Президент Франклин Рузвельт выступил в конгрессе с речью и объявил войну Японии. 11 декабря Германия и Италия, а 13 декабря — Румыния, Венгрия и Болгария — объявляют войну США.

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it.

Lesson 2

The Declaration of Independence

American Founding Fathers

The Founding Fathers were the Americans who established the form of the US government at the Federal Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia (1787) when they created and signed the American Constitution. The best known Founding Fathers are **G. Washington, T. Jefferson, B. Franklin, A. Hamilton, J. Adams** and **J. Madison**.

George Washington: 1st President (1789 - 1797)

Father of His Country

'I can foresee that nothing but the rooting out of slavery can perpetuate the existence of our union.'



George Washington was born in 1732 in the family of a Virginian planter and was raised on a large Virginia plantation. He learnt the morals, manners and knowledge for an 18th century Virginia gentleman.

At the age of 16 he began his military career and explored land in western Virginia.

When he was 20 years old, he was appointed major of Virginia militia, and three years later he was made colonel and commander of all Virginia's forces. He took part in the French and Indian Wars in 1754-1763 and distinguished himself by capturing Fort Duquesne.

After that war Washington married a widow, Martha Custis, and devoted himself to a busy and happy life. He settled down to a life as a farmer and landowner. He became one of the richest men in the colonies. He never had any children of his own, but his wife had two young children from her first marriage and he raised them as his own.

After 1770 getting independence from Britain became the major problem in the American colonies. In 1774 George Washington was chosen one of Virginia's delegates to the First, and in 1775 to the Second Continental Congress. When the War for Independence began, Washington was appointed commander-in-chief of all the colonial forces. Washington didn't want war because he clearly

understood the difficulty of fighting a powerful enemy with a badly equipped and poorly trained army. The colonists were not accustomed to taking orders, and Washington faced great difficulties in his efforts to establish strict discipline. He insisted that it was necessary to impress upon the mind of every soldier the importance of the cause they were fighting for.

Loyalty to England in the colonies was still very strong. England was doing nothing to try to keep the peace.



Finally in June 1776 a committee was chosen to write a declaration of independence. Thomas Jefferson, a young Virginian, wrote the draft of the declaration based on the committee's suggestions. On July 4, 1776, after two days of discussion, Congress passed **the Declaration of Independence**. Church bells rang over Philadelphia to make independence known. The Declaration gave reasons

for fighting the American Revolution. It has served as a guide to freedom-loving people throughout the world.

The colonies stated that they were no longer a part of Great Britain. A new nation was born.

Washington's fidelity to the Revolution inspired others, and by 1781 he had managed to build up a strong army, which won a victory in the war. When General George Washington's Army defeated the British in the Revolutionary War, some of the officers began talking about the possibility of making Washington king of their new country of America but Washington hated the idea. He was such an impressive figure, both physically and morally, that one delegate remarked that Washington was "the only man in whose presence I felt any awe."

When he was elected to be the first President of the United States of America, on April 6, 1789, he won all of the electoral votes and served two terms.

When it came time to swear him into office, however, he was out of money (he spent all of his money on the war and hadn't been paid back yet). He had to borrow \$100 from a friend to travel from Mount Vernon, his home in northern Virginia to attend his inauguration ceremony in New York City. He was 56.

On April 30, 1789, George Washington, standing on the balcony of Federal Hall on Wall Street in New York, took his oath of office as the first President of the United States. New York City was the

nation's first capital. Washington took the oath of office on the Bible. He promised to do his best to keep, protect and defend the Constitution.

Washington was a big man. He had reddish-blond hair, and his face scarred from smallpox he got on a trip to the Caribbean when he was a teenager. He also had terrible problems with his teeth. When he took his oath as president, in fact, he had only one tooth left and continually experimented with different kinds of false teeth made from ivory, lead and so on.

Washington loved the outdoors, fishing and foxhunting especially. As far as formal schooling went, he never went beyond grammar school and always had trouble spelling. But he did have an IQ of 125. He was a very loud snorer.

On December 12, 1799 he was caught in a snowstorm while riding around his farm and became sick. Two days later George Washington died of a throat infection on December 14, in 1799. For months the Nation mourned him.

George Washington's integrity set a pattern for all other presidents to follow. He showed future Presidents how to be a strong leader. The nation grew and expanded while Washington was President. The new states: Vermont, Kentucky and Tennessee – entered the Union.

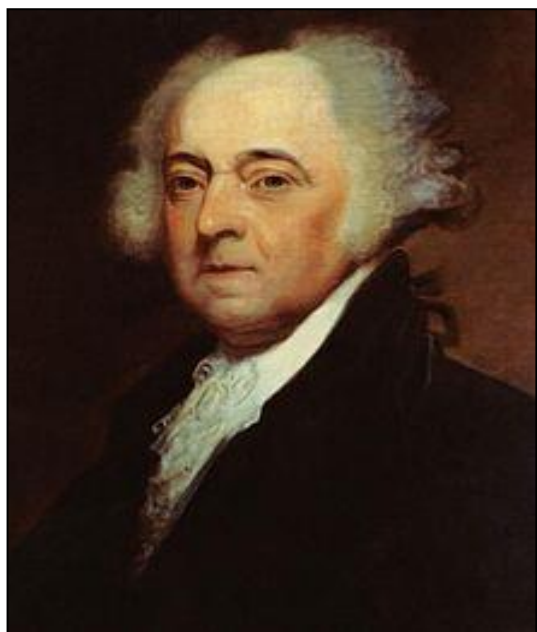
Washington could have been President for life but he didn't feel this was right. He had devoted most of his life to helping his country.

In honour of the first president, the newly-built capital of the country was named Washington. Seventeen cities, thirty-one counties, one state are named after Washington. He is considered one of the greatest presidents of the USA because he saw his nation through one of its most difficult times – its birth.

John Adams: 2nd President

(1797–1801)

John Adams was a revolutionary patriot, Massachusetts delegate to the First and Second



Continental Congress, signer of the Declaration of Independence, minister to France who helped negotiate the Treaty of Paris ending the Revolutionary War, first U.S. foreign minister to Great Britain, and first vice president and second president of the United States. Among the Founding Fathers, Adams played a leading role in articulating arguments for independence and defining republicanism as the core American governing principle.

An American Founding Father, Adams was a statesman, diplomat, and a leading advocate of American independence from Great Britain. Well educated, he was an Enlightenment political theorist who promoted republicanism, as well as a strong central

government, and wrote prolifically about his often seminal ideas, both in published works and in letters to his wife as well as to other Founding Fathers. Adams was a lifelong opponent of slavery, having never bought a slave. In 1770, he provided a principled, controversial, and successful legal defense to British soldiers accused in the **Boston Massacre**¹, because he believed in the right to counsel and the "protection of innocence".

Notes:

Boston Massacre¹- *The Boston Massacre, known as the Incident on King Street by the British, was an incident on March 5, 1770, in which British Army soldiers killed five male civilians and injured six others. British troops had been stationed in Boston, capital of the Province of Massachusetts Bay, since 1768 in order to protect and support crown-appointed colonial officials.*

Eight soldiers, one officer, and four civilians were arrested and charged with murder. Defended by the lawyer and future American President, John Adams, six of the soldiers were acquitted, while the other two were convicted of manslaughter and given reduced sentences.

John Adams was born in October 30, 1735. Young Adams went to Harvard College at age sixteen in 1751. His father expected him to become a minister, but Adams had doubts. After graduating in 1755 with an A.B., he taught school for a few years in Worcester, Massachusetts, allowing himself time to think about his career choice. After much reflection, he decided to become a lawyer. He later became a Unitarian. Adams then studied law in the office of John Putnam, the leading lawyer in Worcester.

On October 25, 1764, five days before his 29th birthday, Adams married Abigail Smith, the daughter of a Congregational minister. They had six children.

Adams came to prominence in the early stages of the American Revolution. A lawyer and public figure in Boston, as a delegate from Massachusetts to the Continental Congress, he played a leading role in persuading Congress to declare independence. He assisted Thomas Jefferson in drafting the Declaration of Independence in 1776, and was its primary advocate in the Congress. A political theorist and historian, Adams largely wrote the Massachusetts Constitution in 1780. One of his greatest roles was as a judge of character: in 1775, he nominated George Washington to be commander-in-chief, and 25 years later nominated John Marshall to be Chief Justice of the United States.

His achievements have received greater recognition in modern times, though his contributions were not initially as celebrated as those of other Founders. Adams was the first U.S. president to reside in the executive mansion that eventually became known as the White House.

As President, Adams followed Washington's lead in making the presidency the example of republican values, and stressing civic virtue; he was never implicated in any scandal. Adams continued not just the Washington cabinet but all the major programs of the Washington Administration as well. Adams continued to strengthen the central government, in particular by expanding the navy and army. His economic programs were a continuation of those of Hamilton. He remained quite independent of his cabinet throughout his term, often making decisions despite strong opposition from it. It was out of this management style that he avoided war with France, despite a strong desire among his cabinet secretaries for war.

In 1800, Adams was defeated for re-election by Thomas Jefferson and retired to Massachusetts. Adams retired into private life. Depressed when he left office, he did not attend Jefferson's inauguration. He left Washington before Jefferson's inauguration. He began to work on an autobiography (which he never finished),

He later resumed his friendship with Jefferson and correspondence with his old friends.

He and his wife founded an accomplished family line of politicians, diplomats, and historians now referred to as the Adams political family. Adams was the father of John Quincy Adams (1825–1829), the sixth President of the United States, the only son of a former president to hold the office until George W. Bush in 2001.

On July 4, 1826, the 50th anniversary of the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, Adams died in Quincy, Massachusetts. Adams did not know that Jefferson, his great political rival—and later friend and correspondent—had died a few hours earlier.

His crypt lies at United First Parish Church (also known as the Church of the Presidents) in Quincy. Until his record was broken by Ronald Reagan on October 10, 2001, he was the nation's longest-living President (90 years, 247 days).

Thomas Jefferson: 3rd President

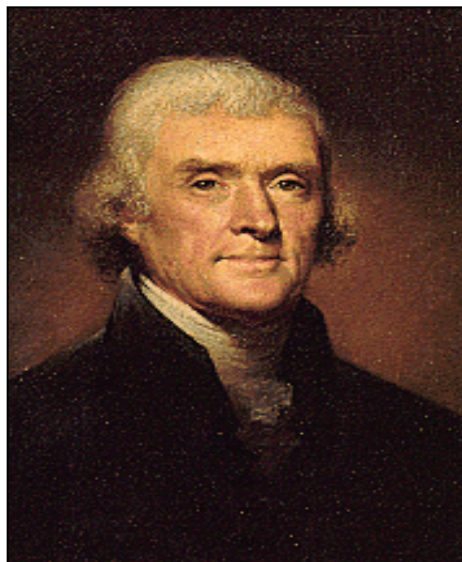
(1801 - 1809)

The Sage of Monticello

‘Every generation needs a new revolution.’

Thomas Jefferson was an outstanding American revolutionary democrat, one of the nation's **Founding Fathers** and the author of the immortal “Declaration of Independence”.

He was born in the family of a Virginian planter, and received a very good education at the college of

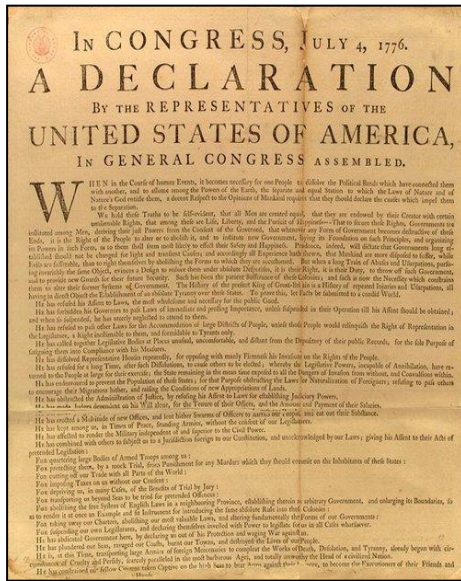


William and Mary (now the University in Virginia), a prominent institution of higher learning in the American colonies.

Before he was 30 years old, he had studied half a dozen languages, law, mathematics, philosophy and science. A self-taught architect, he designed some of the most beautiful houses in the world. He was a fine violinist and composer. He created the American system of money. Jefferson had the reputation of one of the best-educated people of that time.

Freckled and sandy-haired, rather tall and awkward, Jefferson was eloquent as a correspondent, but he was no public speaker. He used to contribute his pen rather than his voice.

In 1775 Jefferson was sent as a delegate to the Second Continental Congress, where he wrote the



Declaration of Independence which was adopted on July 4, 1776. At the age of 33, he was younger than many of his fellow delegates, but they readily put their trust in his ability to draft this important document.

He was the governor of Virginia (1779-81). In 1783 he was sent on a diplomatic mission to France, and in 1786 he took part in concluding a peace treaty with Britain. In 1789 President Washington appointed him Secretary of State (министр иностранных дел), but his sympathy for the French Revolution led him into conflict with Alexander Hamilton. So, in 1793 he resigned. Sharp political conflict in the country developed, and two separate parties, **the Federalists** and

the Democratic-Republicans, began to form. Jefferson gradually assumed leadership of the Republicans, who sympathized with the revolutionary cause in France.

In 1796 Jefferson was elected vice-president, and in 1801 – President of the United States of America. He became the third President and served two terms, until 1809. He helped to design Washington, D.C., and was the first president to have his Inauguration Day there. After he was sworn in as president, Thomas Jefferson walked across the street to a boardinghouse to get some dinner. There were no empty seats, so he waited. When he moved into the White House, he stopped one custom that General Washington had started – the president bowing to visitors, Jefferson began shaking hands instead.

Jefferson didn't like stuffiness or fancy clothes. Sometimes he would wear his slippers to dinner. He hated appearing in public, but once ate a tomato in front of people to prove that the strange, new vegetable was not poisonous.

One of his greatest loves was books. He enjoyed talking about books and ideas. He had a round table made so that everyone sitting at it would feel equal. He let his collection of 6 000 volumes become the first Library of Congress.

In the White House, Jefferson had a pet mockingbird named Dick. The bird always rode on his shoulder and hopped up the stairs next to him when he went up to bed.

Jefferson's greatest achievement as President was the expanding the area of the United States westward. Believing that the future of the United States lay in the West, Jefferson sent his diplomats to Paris with an offer to buy **the Louisiana Territory** lying to the west of the Mississippi River which

belonged to France. Napoleon, who needed a lot of money for waging his wars, agreed to sell Louisiana for 15 million dollars. The Louisiana Purchase doubled the size of the United States.

Jefferson wanted to know more about Louisiana. He wished to find out about the Native Americans, the animals, the minerals, the climate and the type of land. To make such an exploration Jefferson chose **Lewis**, his personal secretary, and **William Clark**, Lewis's close friend. It was Jefferson's idea to send the expedition to the Pacific. They were to try to find a route all the way to the Pacific Ocean. In 1806 they built a fort and spent the winter on the shores of the Pacific. In the spring they started the trip home. Their diary was a document of great importance. Jefferson received an excellent report of their journey. He learnt much about the geography of the new territory, about the animals, trees and plants there. Lewis and Clark brought Jefferson some huge bears they had captured. Jefferson had them displayed in cages on the White House lawn for everyone to see.

The work of Lewis and Clark gave the USA a claim to the Oregon Country. In 1846 this area became part of the USA.

During Jefferson's second term, he was increasingly preoccupied with keeping the Nation from involvement in the Napoleonic wars, though both England and France interfered with the neutral rights of American merchant men.

Like his fellow Virginia farmer George Washington, Jefferson owned slaves. And like him Jefferson realized that the evil of slavery would be one of the biggest problems the nation, as a free people, would have to solve. In 1808 Jefferson banned the import of slaves from Africa.

In 1809, when his second term was over, Jefferson retired to his estate Monticello, but to his last days he kept in touch with public affairs through a large correspondence.

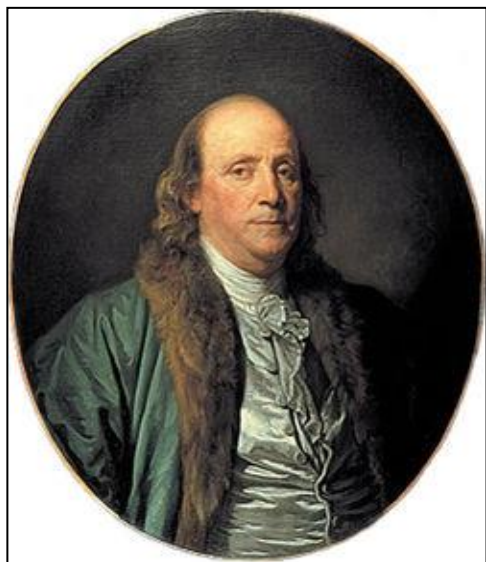
In 1819 he established the University of Virginia and designed its buildings.

He died on July 4, 1826, on the 50th anniversary of the adoption of the Declaration of Independence.

Benjamin Franklin

(January 17, 1706 – April 17, 1790)

Benjamin Franklin was born in Boston, Massachusetts. He became a newspaper editor, printer,



merchant, and philanthropist in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania. He was one of the most prominent of Founders and early political figures and statesmen of the United States. As a "self-made man" noted for his curiosity, ingenuity, generosity, and diversity of interests, he became an inspiration and model for many early Americans. As a broad-minded thinker and political leader able to embrace all Americans, he helped unite the people of the colonies into one United States.

As a philosopher and scientist, who had discovered electricity, he was at one point the most famous man in Europe. As a statesman in London before the Revolution, and Minister to France during the Revolution, he defined the new nation in the minds of Europe. His success in securing French military and financial aid, and recruiting military leaders in Europe was decisive for the American victory over Britain.

He published the famous stories of Poor Richard's Almanack and the Pennsylvania Gazette. He organized the first public lending library and fire department in America, a political discussion club, the American Philosophical Society, and public schools. His support for religion and morality was broad; he donated to all denominational churches (liberal and conservative) and the synagogue in Philadelphia.

He became a national hero in America when he convinced Parliament to repeal the hated Stamp Act. A diplomatic genius, Franklin was almost universally admired among the French as American minister to Paris, and was a major figure in the development of positive Franco-American relations. From 1775 to 1776, Franklin was Postmaster General under the Continental Congress and from 1785 to his death in 1790 was President of the Supreme Executive Council of Pennsylvania. Contents.

Franklin played a major role in establishing the higher education institutions that would become the Ivy League's University of Pennsylvania and the Franklin and Marshall College. In addition, Franklin was a noted linguist, fluent in five languages, including Greek and Latin. Towards the end of his life, he became one of the most prominent early American abolitionists. Today, Franklin is pictured on the U.S. \$100 bill.

In politics Franklin was very able, both as an administrator and as a diplomat. His most notable service in domestic politics was his reform of the postal system, but his fame as a statesman rests chiefly on his diplomatic services in connection with the relations of the colonies with Great Britain, and later with France.

In 1754, he headed the Pennsylvania delegation to the Albany Congress.

In 1757, Franklin was sent to England to protest against the influence of the Penn family in the government of Pennsylvania, and for five years he remained there, striving to enlighten the people and the ministry of the United Kingdom about colonial conditions. He also managed to secure a post for his son, William Franklin, as Colonial Governor of New Jersey.

In December of 1776, he was dispatched to France as commissioner for the United States. He lived in a home in the Parisian suburb donated by Jacques-Donatien Le Ray de Chaumont who would become a friend and the most important foreigner to help the United States win the War of Independence. Franklin secured the support of the King of France for the American Revolution and recruited military leaders to train and lead soldiers. Franklin remained in France until 1785.

After his return from France, Franklin became an ardent abolitionist, freeing both of his slaves. He eventually became president of The Society for the Relief of Free Negroes Unlawfully Held in Bondage.

He is the only Founding Father who is a signatory of all three of the major documents of the founding of the United States: **The Declaration of Independence, The Treaty of Paris, and the United States Constitution.** He was 70 years old when he signed the Declaration and 81 when he signed the Constitution.

Also in 1787, a group of prominent ministers in Lancaster, Pennsylvania proposed the foundation of a new college to be named in Franklin's honor. Franklin donated £200 towards the development of Franklin College, which would later merge with Marshall College in 1853. It is now called Franklin and Marshall College.

Between 1771 and 1788, he finished his autobiography. While it was at first addressed to his son, it was later completed for the benefit of mankind at the request of a friend.

Benjamin Franklin died from pleuritic attack at his home in Philadelphia on April 17, 1790, at age 84. Approximately 20,000 people attended his funeral. He was interred in Christ Church Burial Ground in Philadelphia.

Alexander Hamilton **(January 11, 1757 – July 12, 1804)**

Alexander Hamilton was an American politician, statesman, writer, lawyer, and soldier. One of the United States' most prominent and brilliant early constitutional lawyers, he was an influential delegate to the United States Constitutional Convention and one of the principal authors of the Federalist Papers, which expounded and urged the ratification of the U.S. Constitution to skeptical New Yorkers. The Federalist Papers—and Hamilton's contributions to them—remain today a standard source on the original intent of the document.



Hamilton was the first and most influential **Secretary of the Treasury**, establishing the foundations for American capitalism, including the First Bank of the United States, public credit, and stock and commodity exchanges. To promote his national vision and defend against the differing political visions of Thomas Jefferson and James Madison, Hamilton led efforts to found the first political party in the United States, **the Federalist Party**, which he dominated until his death.

During this time, anti-British sentiment was growing in the American colonies. A visit to Boston seems to have thoroughly confirmed the conclusion, to which reason had already led him, that he should cast in his fortunes with the colonists. And Hamilton

threw himself into their cause with ardor. To support the colonists, he organized fellow King's College students into a kind of artillery company.

Hamilton joined Washington's staff in March 1777 with the rank of lieutenant-colonel, and served for four years as his private secretary and confidential aide.

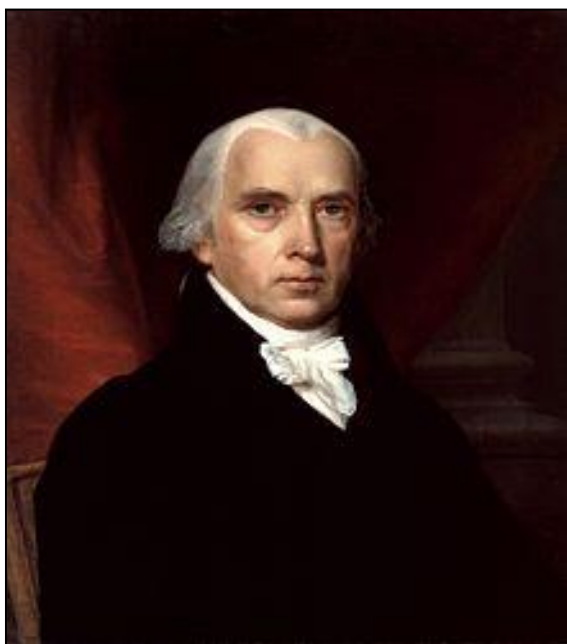
After the war, he served as a member of the Congress of the Confederation from 1782 to 1783, and then retired to open his own law office in New York City. He founded **the Bank of New York**, now the oldest ongoing banking organization in the United States, in 1784. His public career resumed when he attended the Annapolis Convention as a delegate in 1786, and drafted its resolution for a Constitutional Convention.

He also served in the New York State Legislature and attended the U.S. Constitutional Convention in 1787. Throughout the convention's proceedings, Hamilton argued consistently for a strong central government, including a king-like president (minus the familial inheritance of power), and an upper legislative body based on the English House of Lords. For this, he was long derided by political foes as a monarchist. Hamilton opposed equal representation in the proposed Senate. He also wanted senators to serve for life. Finally, Hamilton strongly advocated the abolition of slavery.

He died after Vice-President Aaron Burr wounded him in a duel.

James Madison: 4th President **(March 16, 1751 – June 28, 1836)**

James Madison was an American statesman and political theorist. He was the fourth President of the United States (1809–1817) and is hailed as the **“Father of the Constitution”** for being the primary



author of the United States Constitution and at first an opponent of, and then a key author of the United States Bill of Rights. He inherited tobacco land and owned slaves although he spent his entire adult life as a career politician.

His collaboration with Alexander Hamilton and John Jay produced **the Federalist Papers** (1788), which became the most influential explanation and defense of the Constitution after its publication. Madison's most distinctive belief as a political theorist was the principle of divided power. Madison believed that "parchment barriers" were not sufficient to protect the rights of citizens. Power must be divided, both between federal and state governments, and within the federal government to protect individual rights from the tyranny of the majority.

In 1789, Madison became a leader in the new House of Representatives, drafting many basic laws. In one of his most famous roles, he drafted the first ten amendments to the Constitution and thus is known as the **"Father of the Bill of Rights"**. Madison worked closely with the President George Washington to organize the new federal government. Breaking with Hamilton and what became the Federalist party in 1791, Madison and Thomas Jefferson organized what they called **the Republican Party** (later called by historians the Democratic-Republican Party) in opposition to key policies of the Federalists.

The Constitution is significant as a founding charter of the United States. In the Constitution, the assumption is that the people already have those rights. Madison and the other Founders referred to them as natural rights, in that they are inherent and universal to all men and not granted or conceded by the state or any other power.

"We the People" would found the government and specify exactly what powers it would have, not the other way around. This was upside down from what had been the norm in world history.

Madison was a leader in initiating the Constitutional Convention; during the course of the Convention he spoke over two hundred times, and his fellow delegates rated him highly.

He felt, as other Founders did, that Americans have countless natural rights – too many to put on a list. For example, the right to travel freely throughout the country, the right to have children, the right to sign a contract, the right to own land, etc. By 1791, the last ten of Madison's proposed amendments were ratified and became **the Bill of Rights**.

In 1826, after the death of Jefferson, Madison followed Jefferson as the second Rector ("President") of the University of Virginia. It would be his last occupation. He retained the position as college chancellor for ten years, until his death in 1836.

Although his health had now almost failed, he managed to produce several memoranda on political subjects, including an essay against the appointment of chaplains for Congress and the armed forces, because this produced religious exclusion, but not political harmony.

Madison lived on until 1836, increasingly ignored by the new leaders of the American polity. The last of the Founding Fathers died at Montpelier on June 28. He was buried in the Madison Family Cemetery at Montpelier.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

-Founding Fathers - "отцы-основатели" (государственные деятели стоящие у истоков США; особенно члены конвента, принявшего в 1787 Конституцию США)

-to perpetuate – увековечить

-to root out – уничтожить

-fidelity – преданность

-awe – благоговение

-ivory – слоновая кость

- lead – свинец
- integrity – прямота, честность
- freckled – веснушчатый
- eloquent – красноречивый
- to resign – уходить в отставку
- to assume – взять на себя, принять
- mockingbird – пересмешник
- commissioner – уполномоченный
- interred – погребён
- to expound – излагать (теорию)
- ratification – ратификация, утверждение
- ardor – рвение
- aide – помощник
- foe – враг
- to hail – приветствовать
- parchment – рукопись на пергаменте
- embargo – эмбарго, правительственный запрет на выход торговых судов из их портов
- bulwark – вал
- prolifically – в большом количестве
- seminal – плодотворный, продуктивный
- massacre – резня, бойня
- to counsel – обсуждать, рассматривать
- to nominate – предлагать кандидатуру
- to resume – возобновлять
- executive – административный
- to reside – проживать
- Unitarian – сторонник унитаризма
- combative – боевой
- ingenuity – изобретательность
- aid – поддержка
- gazette – бюллетень
- to repeal – аннулировать
- abolitionist – сторонник упразднения
- assumption – предъявление прав
- inherent – обязательный
- chaplain – священник
- polity – форма правления

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Who were the Founding Fathers? What did they found?
2. Who was George Washington? What did he do for his nation? Why is he considered one of the greatest presidents of the USA?
3. Who was J. Adams? How did he come to prominence? Why did his achievements receive greater recognition in modern times? What did he as President?
4. Who was T. Jefferson? Why did he have the reputation of one of the best-educated people of that time? What did he achieve as President?
5. Who was B. Franklin? What did he do for a new nation? Why did he become a national hero in America? Was he a great scientist or a great politician?
6. Who was A. Hamilton? How did he serve his nation?

7. Who was J. Madison? Why did he become so famous? What did he do for his new nation?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

I. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. Д. Вашингтон отличался недюжинной физической силой. При росте 190 сантиметров он весил 100 килограммов. Он неизменно побеждал в соревнованиях по борьбе, увлекался верховой ездой, охотой, рыбалкой, а также танцами, посещая все балы в округе и пользуясь неизменным успехом у женщин. Будущий президент США также страстно увлекался картами и билиардом.
2. Д. Вашингтон - единственный в истории кандидат в президенты, получивший все до единого голоса выборщиков.
3. Джон Адамс был блестящим юристом, дипломатом и теоретиком. Роль президента далась ему нелегко. Но он с честью принимал все внутренние экономические конфликты, при этом все силы направив на внешнюю политику и поиск значимости страны на мировой арене.
4. Томас Джефферсон смог убедить вождей индейцев и присоединить земли 53 коренных племен к Америке. В итоге он увеличил территорию страны вдвое.
5. Во время избирательной кампании за пост губернатора Нью-Йорка Александр Гамильтон выпустил немало оскорбительных памфлетов против вице-президента Аарона Бёрра, в связи с чем последний и вызвал его на дуэль. Роковой выстрел Бёрра поразил печень Гамильтона и позвоночник. После ранения Гамильтон прожил ещё полтора дня.
6. Б. Франклин и А. Гамильтон — государственные деятели США, изображённые на денежных купюрах, но которые при этом не были президентами.
7. Читать и писать Бенджамин Франклин научился самостоятельно в возрасте около пяти лет.
8. Мир между Соединенными Штатами и Англией был подписан в Париже 30 ноября 1782 года. Англия признала независимость своих колоний в Северной Америке, но удержала за собой Канаду.

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it.

Lesson 3

Political Life and the Democratic process

Separation of Powers

The USA is a presidential republic. The American Constitution is based on the doctrine of the separation of powers between the executive, legislative and judiciary. The respective government institutions – **the Presidency, Congress, and the Supreme Court and other federal courts** – were given limited and specific powers.

Executive Branch and Presidential Powers

The executive branch of the government puts the country's laws into effect. The President of the United States is a member of the executive branch. The President must be at least 35 years old, and be a natural citizen of the USA. In addition, he must have lived in the US for at least 14 years, and be a civilian. The President together with the Vice-President is elected every four years and cannot serve more than two terms.. When the President receives a bill from the Congress and he signs it, the bill becomes a law. He also appoints the justices to the Supreme Court. He must do his job according to the Constitution. The President is a Commander-in-chief of the armed forces. As head of his political party, with ready access to the news media, the president can easily influence public opinion.

The president appoints the heads and senior officials of the departments and agencies. Heads of the major departments, called 'secretaries', are part of the president's Cabinet. The majority of federal workers, however, are selected on the basis of merit, not politics.

The Cabinet developed outside the Constitution as a matter of practical necessity, for even in the days of George Washington it was impossible for the president to discharge his duties without advice and assistance.

Some presidents have relied heavily on them for advice, others lightly, and some few have largely ignored them. Whether or not cabinet members act as advisers, they retain responsibility for directing the activities of the government in specific areas of concern.

The Executive Office of the President

There are a number of staff organizations grouped into the Executive Office of the President. These include the White House staff, the National Security Council, the Office of Management and Budget, the Council of Economic Advisers, the Office of the U.S. Trade Representative, and the Office of Science and Technology Policy.

The White House is the official residence of every US President. It stands on the south side of Pennsylvania Avenue in Washington. The main building has 6 floors, with the East Terrace leading to the East Wing, a three-story building used for offices and as an entrance for official events. The West Terrace contains offices and leads to the Executive Office.

It is built of stone painted white and was designed in 1800 by James Hoban, who was born in Ireland. The cornerstone of the Executive Mansion, as it was originally known, was laid on October 13, 1792. President Washington never lived there. It was John Adams, the second President who arrived in the new capital city to take up his residence in the White House. Compared to the huge, glittering palaces used by European and Asian rulers at the time it was built, the White House is a simple, almost unpretentious dwelling place.

On August 24, 1814, the British troops entered Washington and set fire to the White House. In 1817, James Hoban completed rebuilding the “Executive Mansion”.

The British were indirectly responsible for the name “White House”. Since the marks of the fire were clearly seen on the sandstone walls, they had to be obliterated by being painted white. But the House remained the “Executive Mansion” until the administration of Theodore Roosevelt (1901-1909), when the words “White House” appeared and the term became official.

In 1947 President Truman (1945-1953) had a second-floor porch built into the south portico. In 1948 he asked Congress to authorize complete rebuilding because the White House was unsafe. Reconstruction cost \$ 5,761,000. The interior was completely removed, steel frame was built to support the interior. All original trim and metal work were preserved.

The White House has 132 rooms. 54 rooms on the second and the third floors are reserved for the First Family. 5 of the rooms are open to the public. They are **the Blue Room, East Room, Green Room, Red Room, and State Dining Room.**

The Oval Blue Room contains furnishings in the French Empire style. There are seven gilded chairs. There is a portrait of President W. Taft sitting in the Blue Room.

The East Room is used for large gatherings. The grand piano with gilt American eagle supports was given to the White House in 1938. There is a full-length portrait of George Washington.

The Green Room was intended to be the common dining room. There are several historic pieces of Presidential silver on sofa table. Portraits of two presidents hang above the door.

The Red Room is one of the four state reception rooms. The furniture in this room dates from 1810-1830.

The State Dining Room seats 140 guests. Its table is surrounded by Queen Ann-style chairs.

There are many famous rooms such as the Library Room, the China Room, the Diplomatic Reception Room, the Map Room, the Lincoln Bedroom, the Treaty Room, and, of course, the President's Oval Office.

A million visitors go through the White House every year free of charge. Most visitors walk through the East Garden Room to the glass-enclosed colonnade that leads to the Ground Floor. A massive bronze bust of Abraham Lincoln rests in a wall niche. Ground Floor Corridor is made of marble. There are busts of George Washington, Benjamin Franklin and other outstanding Americans. There are portraits of First Ladies.

Legislative Branch

The Legislative branch of the US government, or **the Congress**, represents all of the American states. It is the only branch of U.S. government that can make federal laws. It consists of two chambers: **the House of Representatives and the Senate**.

Each state has two senators, who are elected every 6 years. **A senator** must be at least 30 years old, a citizen of the United States for 9 years, and live in the state she or he will represent. The duty of the senators was to ensure that their states were treated equally in all legislation. There are currently 100 senators. The Senate has the special privilege of unlimited debate to safeguard the rights of minorities, but this can enable a small group of senators to prevent the passage of a bill. The Senate has special responsibility in matters to do with foreign policy, and it also has the power to advise and consent on appointments made by the President. **The Vice-President** of the USA is president of **the Senate**.

The House of Representatives is the dynamic institution of the federal government. There are currently 435 members who are elected every two years. A representative must be at least 25 years old, a citizen for 7 years, and live in the state.

The Chairman of the House of Representatives, **the Speaker**, is elected by the House and has important responsibilities, giving him considerable influence over the President. More over, should the President or Vice President die before the end of their terms, it is the Speaker who becomes President.

The job of **the Congress** is to make laws. The President may sign or veto a bill. The Congress can pass the law anyway if it gets a two-thirds majority vote. The Congress can also declare war. The House of Representatives can impeach the President. This means that the House can charge the President with a crime. In this case, the Senate will put the President on trial. The Senate votes to approve the justices that the President appoints to the Supreme Court. Congress also controls the nation's finances and its permanent specialist staff helps Congress to consider and change the budget presented each year by the President.

When a bill passes the House and the Senate in different forms, members of both bodies meet in a ‘conference committee’ to iron out the differences. Groups that try to persuade members of Congress to vote for or against a bill are called ‘lobbies’. Once both bodies have passed the same version of a bill, it goes to the president for approval.

In a system of government based on a series of checks and balances, the two Houses of Congress act as a check of each other, as well as together forming a check on the powers of the executive branch.

The Seat of American Legislature

The Capitol, located on Capitol Hill, dominates the City of Washington. Through the halls of this magnificent structure have passed the leading figures in American history.

The Capitol is the tallest edifice (88 feet) in Washington: no other building is allowed to be taller than the Capitol.

Construction of the US Capitol began in 1793. President John Adams addressed the first joint session of Congress in the Senate Chamber on November 22, 1800.

All interiors of the building were burnt by the British in 1814. The Capitol was reoccupied in 1819. The present Senate and House wings were begun in 1851. Since then, numerous changes have been made.

The Library of Congress

The Library of Congress is the Nation’s library. Its services extend not only to Members and committees of the Congress, but to executive and judicial branches of government, to libraries throughout the Nation and the world, and to the scholars and researchers and artists and scientists who use its resources.

When President John Adams signed the bill that provided for the removal of the seat of government to the new capital city of Washington in 1800, he created a reference library for Congress only.

The first books were ordered from England and shipped across the Atlantic. The library was housed in the new Capitol, until August 1814, when British troops invaded Washington, and when they put the torch to the Capitol Building, the Small Library was lost.

Within a month former President Thomas Jefferson, living in retirement, offered his personal library, accumulated over a span of 50 years. His library was considered one of the finest in the United States.

After considerable debate Congress in January 1815 accepted Jefferson’s offer, appropriating \$ 23950 for the collection of 6487 books.

The Library of Congress complex on Capitol Hill includes three buildings. **The Thomas Jefferson Building**, executed in Italian Renaissance style, is the oldest of these. Heralded as the largest

library structure in the world, it is elaborately decorated with splendid sculpture, murals, and mosaics created by 50 American artists.

The Main Reading Room houses a collection of 45 000 reference books and desks for 250 readers. The adjacent Computer Catalogue Centre provides public access to the Library's automated catalogue files through computer terminals.

The simply designed, dignified **John Adams Building**, faced with white Georgia marble, was opened in 1939. Bas-relief sculptures on its large bronze doors represent 12 historic figures credited with giving the art of writing to their people.

The white marble **James Madison Memorial Building**, dedicated on April 24, 1980, more than doubled the Library's available Capitol Hill space. Eight reading rooms, offices, and storage areas for the Library's special-format collections number over 70 million items.

Collections of the whole library include more than 86 million items covering every subject in format that vary from papyrus to optical disk. The Library has 26 million books in 60 languages and more than 36 million manuscripts, among them such treasures of American history and culture as the papers of Presidents, notable families, writers, artists, and scientists.

The Library has the world's largest and most comprehensive cartographic collection – almost 4 million maps and atlases, dating back to the middle of the 14th century, music collection that includes not only paper material, but also Stradivarius instruments. There are also 80 000 motion picture titles, 50 000 television broadcasts, 350 000 radio transcriptions.

Judicial branch

The judicial branch of the government is the system of courts in the United States. Its job is to enforce laws. The Supreme Court is the highest court in the country. It consists of 9 justices: one Chief Justice and 8 Associate justices. The justices are appointed for life. The Supreme Court makes sure that people obey the laws. The Supreme Court can also decide if a law is constitutional. The judicial branch works together with the legislative and executive branches to protect the Constitution and the rights of people.

Government of the People

Political Parties

Many of America's Founding Fathers hated the thought of political parties. They were sure that quarreling parties would be more interested in contending with each other than in working for the



common good. They wanted individual citizens to vote for individual candidates, without the interference of organized groups – but this was not to be.

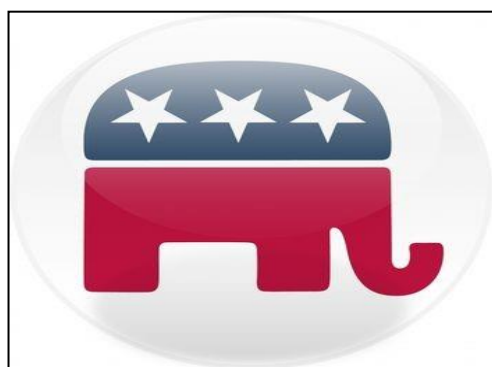
Political parties were not mentioned in the original Constitution. Differences over the role of the federal government led to the first national parties – **the Federalists and the Republicans**. Since then two major parties have dominated political life.

By the 1790s, the followers of Alexander Hamilton called themselves ‘Federalists’, they favoured a strong central government that would support the interests of commerce and industry. The followers of Thomas Jefferson called themselves ‘Democratic-Republicans’, they preferred a decentralized agrarian republic in which the federal government had limited power.

By 1828, the Federalists had disappeared as an organization. The Democratic-Republicans became Democrats, and the two-party system, still in existence today, was born.

By 1860, parties were well established as the country’s dominant political organizations. Party loyalty was passed from fathers to sons, and party activities – including spectacular campaign events, complete with uniformed marching groups and torchlight parades – were a part of the social life of many communities.

By the 1920s, this boisterous folksiness had diminished. Municipal reforms, civil service reform, corrupt practices acts, and presidential primaries to replace the power of politicians at national conventions had all helped to clean up politics.



The Democratic Party has existed since the beginning of the 1800s. Compared with their rivals, **the Republican Party**, the Democrats are more liberal and have strong support from minorities and the trade unions. Democrats generally believe that government has an obligation to provide social and economic programs for those who need them. Democratic Presidents have included Thomas Jefferson, Andrew Jackson, Franklin Roosevelt, Harry Truman, John Kennedy, Bill Clinton and so on. The traditional symbol for the party is **the donkey**.

The Republican Party, sometimes called the Grand Old Party, receives more support from rich people and is more conservative than its rival. It was established in 1854 by people who wanted to free the slaves. Abraham Lincoln was the first Republican President, and others have included Theodore Roosevelt, Ronald Reagan, George Bush and George W Bush and so on. The official symbol of the party is **an elephant**.

Republicans believe that social and economic programs are too costly to taxpayers. Republicans put more emphasis on encouraging private enterprise in the belief that a strong private sector makes citizens less dependent on government.

There is little ideological difference between the Democratic and the Republican parties, as both parties defend the free-enterprise capitalist system, accepted by almost all Americans as the basis of

American society. It's broadly possible to say that poor people vote for the Democrats and wealthy people for the Republicans. American politics are the politics of pragmatism and a party will always alter its platform to try and catch the mood of the nation.

Presidential Election

The President is directly elected by the people. Americans regularly exercise their democratic rights by voting in elections and by participating in political parties and election campaigns.

Americans over the age of 18 have the right to vote, but only about half of them take part in presidential elections.

A large amount of money is spent on election campaigning, where candidates try to achieve '*name recognition*' (making their names widely known) by advertizing on television, in newspapers and on posters. They take part in debates and hold rallies where they give speeches and go round '*pressing the flesh*', shaking hands with as many voters as possible.

The political parties choose their candidates through a series of *primary elections* held in each state. As these races take place it gradually becomes clear which candidates are the strongest and in the summer each party holds '*a convention*' to make the final choice of candidates for President and Vice-President. In November, the people go to vote and although people vote for one of the candidate for President, an '*electoral college*' makes the final choice. People don't vote directly for them (President and Vice-President). In each state they vote for electors who vote for a particular candidate. All the electoral votes of a state go to one candidate who got the most votes in the state, and the candidate with at least 270 votes out of 538 becomes President. It's therefore possible for the President to be elected without getting a majority of the US people's votes. Many Americans think that the system is old-fashioned and should be changed.

After the election, the new President goes to Washington for the inauguration on 20 January, and takes the oath of office.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- the legislative branch – законодательная власть
- the House of Representatives – палата представителей
- the Senate – сенат
- to veto a bill – наложить вето на законопроект
- to pass the law – провести закон
- to get a two-thirds majority vote – получить большинство в две трети голосов
- to put the President on trial – судить президента
- to approve the justices – утвердить судей
- to appoint a justice to the Supreme Court – назначить судьёю Верховного суда
- the executive branch – исполнительная власть
- to put the country's laws into effect – приводить в исполнение законы страны

- to be a natural citizen of the USA – родиться в США и быть гражданином США
- to be a civilian – быть штатским
- a term – срок службы
- the judicial branch – судебная власть
- to enforce laws – проводить законы в жизнь
- an associate justice - судья (помощник судьи)
- to be appointed for life – назначаться пожизненно
- check and balances – принцип взаимозависимости и взаимоограничения законодательной, исполнительной и судебной власти
- to abuse – злоупотреблять (властью)
- to interpret the laws – толковать законы
- to ensure – обеспечивать, гарантировать
- to implement – выполнять, внедрять
- State (Department) – Госдепартамент
- Defense – министерство обороны
- Justice - министерство юстиции
- Treasury - министерство финансов
- Commerce - министерство торговли
- Labour - министерство труда и занятости
- Health – министерство здравоохранения
- Education and Welfare - министерство образования и социального обеспечения
- Housing and Urban Development - министерство жилищного строительства и городского развития
- Interior - министерство внутренних дел
- Agriculture and Transportation - министерство сельского хозяйства и транспорта
- resignation – отставка
- inauguration – торжественное вступление в должность
- oath of office – присяга при вступлении в должность
- to lay the cornerstone – заложить первый камень (основание)
- to hail – провозглашать
- currently – в настоящее время
- to stagger – распределять в определённом порядке
- nomination – назначение на должность, выставление кандидата на выборах
- primary elections – предварительные выборы, голосование (сторонников какой-либо партии) для выставления кандидатов на выборах
- Electoral College – коллегия выборщиков на президентских выборах
- Ballot paper – избирательный бюллетень

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Is the USA a presidential or monarchical republic?
2. What is the American Constitution based on?
3. What are the main respective government institutions?
4. What are the main functions of the Executive Branch? Who is the most important member of the Executive Branch?

5. What is the official residence of every US President? Describe it?
6. What are the main functions of the Legislative Branch?
7. What are the main functions of the Senate? Who are the main members of the Senate?
8. What is the job of the House of Representatives and the Congress?
9. Where is the Seat of American Legislature located?
10. How did the Library of Congress appear? What do collections of the whole library include? Why is the Library very much appreciated by the Americans?
11. What are the main functions of the Judicial Branch?
12. What are the main political parties in the USA? How did they appear?
13. What is the procedure of Presidential Election?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

1. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. В Белом доме шесть этажей: два подвальных, два для общественных приёмов и два для семьи Президента.
2. Посетители, приходящие в Белый дом на экскурсию, имеют возможность увидеть самые красивые и исторические помещения.
3. Глава администрации президента США (White House Chief of Staff — досл. Начальник штаба Белого Дома) — старший помощник президента США и глава Исполнительного офиса Президента США. Глава администрации отвечает за надзор за действиями сотрудников Белого дома, управление графиком президента и решает, кто имеет право на встречу с президентом.
4. По традиции, первая леди станет хозяйкой Белого дома. Она имеет возможность изменить его интерьеры по своему вкусу.
5. Кстати, Белый дом стали называть белым, хоть и неофициально, сразу — благодаря светлому песчанику, из которого он был выстроен. Но только в конце 20-х годов прошлого столетия, когда после пожара старейшее административное здание Америки под руководством архитектора дома, Хобэнса, отстроили заново и выкрасили в белый цвет, президент Теодор Рузвельт официально утвердил это название.
6. В 1948 году, при президенте Трумэне, в Белом доме была произведена значительная реконструкция, в том числе построен двухэтажный подвал, который до сих пор служит штабом оперативного руководства внешнеполитическими и военными акциями президента.
7. Именно в Белом доме зимой устанавливается главное рождественское дерево страны. В качестве украшений на елку вешают маленькие макеты мемориалов, являющиеся символами каждого из американских штатов. Эти игрушки изготавливаются художниками каждого штата, и за право сделать рождественский макет к следующему празднику борются лучшие мастера страны.
8. Благодаря первым леди Белый дом являет собой самый интересный музей страны, так как каждая президентская семья оставила в нем фрагменты своего быта. Здесь можно увидеть и сахарницу Марты Вашингтон, и серебряный кофейник Абигейл Адамс. В одной из 132 комнат дворца находится туалетный столик Элеоноры Рузвельт. Значительный след в истории Белого дома, как мы уже говорили, оставила Жаклин Кеннеди. Она наполнила особняк лучшими образцами мебели XVIII-XIX веков, упростила музеи США подарить Белому дому 150 старинных картин, закупила во Франции шторы ручной работы.
9. В Государственном обеденном зале каждый может прочесть выгравированные на каминной доске строки из письма президента Адамса его жене Абигейл, которые являются своеобразной

«молитвой» Белого дома: «Я молюсь о том, чтобы небеса ниспослали все лучшие дары этому дому и всем, кто впоследствии будет здесь жить. Пусть под этой крышей правят только честные, мудрые люди».

10. Для осмотра туристам доступно всего две комнаты, хотя, в общем, в Капитолии их насчитывается более 500. Первый и второй этаж – это офисные помещения Конгресса, на третьем располагается Палата представителей.

11. Из специальных галерей можно наблюдать за самим процессом заседания Конгресса и Сената.

12. Наиболее посещаемым помещением Капитолия является Ротонда, где можно по достоинству оценить коллекцию скульптур и картин.

13. В национальном скульптурном зале Капитолия Вашингтона насчитывается 100 скульптур выдающихся граждан США — по две от каждого из пятидесяти штатов. Даже индейцы есть.

14. В Пентагоне расположено Минобороны США и, наверное поэтому, его еще называют «символом высшей власти» государства. Интересен тот факт, что Пентагон является крупнейшим офисным зданием в мире. В Пентагоне работает более 20 тысяч людей.

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it.

Lesson 4

Outstanding American Presidents

Abraham Lincoln: 16th President (1865 - 1865)

Honest Abe

‘Whenever I hear anyone arguing for slavery, I feel a strong impulse to see it tried on him personally.’

Abraham Lincoln is regarded by many people as America’s greatest president, because he preserved the Union and freed the slaves. Abraham Lincoln is the most famous example of the “**American dream**”. Many Americans think that in their country a man may rise from the lowest to the highest position in their land. That was exactly what Lincoln did.

Abraham Lincoln was born in a log cabin on a small farm in Kentucky, in the family of wandering labourer. The family was constantly on the move, and so Abraham didn’t get any regular education. He only learnt to read and write and do simple arithmetic. But the boy loved to read books, and usually he read late into the night by candlelight.

When Lincoln was a young man, he moved with his family to Illinois, where he spent six years,



working in a shop, acting as a local postmaster, doing other jobs, and all the while studying grammar, law, reading newspapers, thus laying the foundation for his future success.

He entered politics and in 1834 became a candidate to the Parliament of Illinois. He soon became a force in the political life.

In 1836 Lincoln began practicing law. In 1837 he moved to Springfield, which by that time had become the capital of the state. In 1846 he was elected to the United States Congress and in 1847 Lincoln went as a Congressman to the National Assembly.

Lincoln was very tall man, the tallest president. He spoke with a high-pitched prairie accent. He used to roughhouse and wrestle with his young sons. He liked to tell jokes when people would get too gloomy. Lincoln was a quiet, gentle person. In arguing with others about slavery, he never became angry with those who disagreed with him. He simply said that slavery was wrong. "If slavery is not wrong, nothing is wrong," he used to say. Slavery was then becoming a burning question in American politics.

On November 6, 1860, Abraham Lincoln was elected sixteenth President of the United States.



Now the country was clearly split into two opposing camps: the free-from-slavery Northern states and the slave-owning Southern states. The Southerners said that it would mean economic ruin for them. The reason was that the prosperity of the South was based on cotton-growing, and only Negroes worked there. This fact led to the movement of secession of Southern states. In 1861 eleven states left the Union and formed an independent 'Confederacy'. They elected their own President, Jefferson Davis. An increasing number of people mostly from the industrial northern states were called **abolitionists**, the agricultural southern states were called

secessionists.

Lincoln was strongly against slavery and even more strongly against the break-up of the Union. But on April 12, 1861 **the American Civil War** between the North and the South began, one of the saddest periods in the history of the United States.

When the war began, the greatness of Lincoln's mind and heart were unexcelled. As long as he lived and ruled the people of the North, there could be no turning back. Lincoln wrote: 'As I wouldn't be a slave, so I wouldn't be a master. This expresses my idea of democracy'. Lincoln's determination soon began to be widely felt and appreciated by common people. The belief that he could be trusted spread quickly. "Honest Abe" was his nickname.

At first the war went badly for the North. The Southerners headed by **General Robert Lee** and **Colonel Jackson** won some brilliant victories. But Lincoln didn't lose courage. After the battle of Gettysburg in 1863, President Lincoln made the famous **Gettysburg Address** about democracy. The same year he issued the '**Emancipation Proclamation**' which made slavery illegal, but only in the Confederacy. It allowed black people to serve in the army and navy and caused many people in England and France to give their support to the North. Slaves played an important part in the war, giving information to Union soldiers and also serving in the Union army. In the South people suffered greatly during the war and had little to eat. The Proclamation led in 1865 to the Thirteenth Amendment to the American Constitution, which officially ended slavery in all parts of the US.

In 1864, Abraham Lincoln was unanimously reelected President.

On April 9, 1865 General Lee surrendered. The Civil War was over. Lincoln tried to convince former enemies that they should live in peace. But this great man had ruthless enemies. On April 14, 1865, during a theatrical performance in Washington, Lincoln was mortally wounded by a southern conspirator, an actor who supported the South and was angry over the South's defeat. Early the next morning Lincoln died.

More than 600 000 soldiers died during the war. The period after the Civil War (1865 - 1877) was called **Reconstruction**. Many Southerners couldn't see any good in this Reconstruction. Secret societies such as the **Ku Klux Klan** were formed. The Klan started in Tennessee in 1866. Members wore hoods. The Klan was against everyone and everything connected with Reconstruction. They beat and killed blacks. They burnt their schools and churches. The actions of the Klan drew so much attention that federal laws were passed.

From 1890 to 1901 Southern states took steps to stop most blacks from voting. All voters had to pay a poll tax. Many blacks were too poor. All voters had to show they could read and understand the state constitution. Blacks also lost the right to use public places, such as trains, streetcars, hotels, theatres and restaurants.

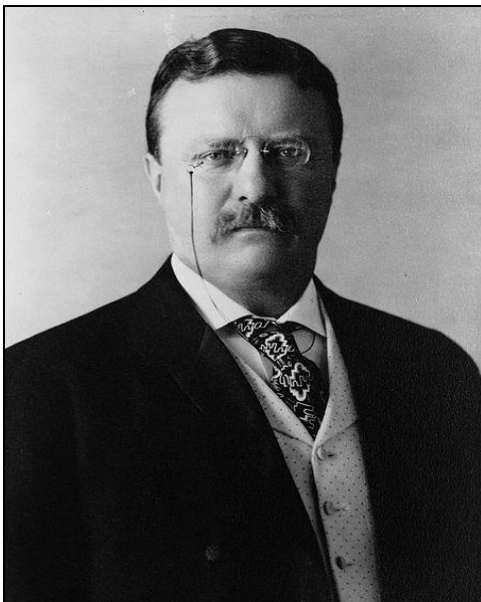
The North and South stopped arguing in the 1890s over rights for blacks. The nation was reunited. The Civil War, 1861 – 1865, had made clear that one part of the country couldn't pull out and form another country. The USA was firmly one nation indivisible.

Theodore Roosevelt: 26th President (1901-1909)

“Near great” President

‘It’s no use to preach to children if you don’t act decently yourself.’

Theodore Roosevelt brought tremendous energy and vitality to the office of President. He used the power of his office to control the power of huge business concerns.



He was a member of the Republican Party. He became Vice-President in 1900 and replaced William McKinley as President when McKinley was murdered a year later.

Born to a well-to-do New York family, Theodore Roosevelt was a scrawny and sickly asthmatic boy who was picked on at school. With his father's help, he soon discovered the benefits of hard exercise and by the time he was a teenager, he was strong enough to box and wrestle at Harvard College. He graduated, married and entered politics.

The tragedy struck. On the same day, in the same house, his wife and his mother both died. Theodore went out to the Western frontier to recover from his grief. He herded cattle, hunted grizzlies,

and even chased outlaws.



After two years he returned to New York and married an old childhood sweetheart, Edith, and got back into public service.

In 1898 the Spanish-American War broke out because the US had promised to recognize the right of Cubans to be independent from Spain. When in 1898 the US warship exploded in Havana harbour and sank with 260 deaths, the US blamed Spain and both nations soon declared war. The US won easily, and the Treaty of Paris ended Spanish rule in Cuba, giving the US Puerto Rico, Guam and the

Philippines. After this victory, the US came to be recognized by other countries as a world power.

When the war broke out Roosevelt put together a hand-picked elite cavalry unit composed of Ivy League football players, New York City policemen, and from out West, cowboys, sheriffs, prospectors, and Native Americans. They were called the **‘Rough Riders’**. In a daring raid they took San Juan Hill in Cuba led by Roosevelt on his horse Little Texas. They became heroes. ‘Rough Riders’ became the popular name for the First Regiment of US Cavalry Volunteers

As president, he filled the job vigorously with his own ideals and vision. He believed that ordinary people shouldn’t be cheated by big companies. The first environmentalist president, he set aside nearly 200 million acres for national parks, forests, reserves, and wildlife refuges. He worked to establish the Panama Canal. His popular nickname was Teddy and the ‘Teddy Bear’ was named after him.

A believer in equality, he was also the first president to invite an African American to the White House for dinner.

When he left office, he went on an extended safari in Africa and collected hundreds of specimens for the Smithsonian museums. In 1906 he was given the Nobel Peace Prize for helping to stop the war between Russia and Japan.

Some historians called him one of the ‘near great’ President.

Franklin D. Roosevelt: 32nd President (1933-1945)

FDI

‘When you get to the end of your rope, tie a knot and hang on.’

Franklin Delano Roosevelt was a Democratic politician who became the 32 US President, also



known informally as FDI, and the only one to be elected four times. From 1921 when he was 39 he suffered from polio (=a serious disease affecting the nervous system) and could hardly walk without help. He fought to regain the use of his legs, particularly through swimming. At the 1924 Democratic Convention he dramatically appeared on crutches. In 1928 Roosevelt became Governor of New York.

Born in 1882 at Hyde Park, New York – now a national historic site – he attended Harvard University and Columbia Law School. On St. Patrick’s Day, 1905, he married Eleanor Roosevelt.

Following the example of his cousin, President Theodore Roosevelt, whom he greatly admired, Franklin D. Roosevelt entered public service through politics, but as a Democrat. He won election to the New York Senate in 1910.

He was elected President in November 1932. When he became President, millions of Americans were out of work, poor and homeless. And there was no end in sight to their suffering. In his first speech FDR gave hope. “This Great Nation will endure as it has endured, will revive and, and will prosper,” he said. “...the only thing we have to fear is fear itself.”

Roosevelt charged into the job, starting many programs that gave people a ‘new deal’ and put them to work. ‘New Deal Program’ helped the US to recover from the **Great Depression**¹. His wife, Eleanor, worked tirelessly to help the poor and inspired many Americans to do the same. But businessmen and bankers were turning more and more against Roosevelt’s New Deal Program. They feared his experiments and disliked the concessions to labour. Roosevelt responded with a new program of reform: Social Security, heavier taxes on the wealthy, new controls over banks and public utilities, and an enormous work relief program for the unemployed.

Notes

Great Depression¹ – is the period of severe economic failure in most countries of the world that lasted from 1929 until World War II. It began in the US when the New York Stock Exchange fell on 29 October 1929, known as ‘Black Tuesday’. Many businesses and banks failed and millions of people lost their jobs.

After four years, things seemed to be improving. In 1936 he was re-elected. In his second term, however, a new war broke out in Europe when Hitler’s Nazi Germany invaded Poland. Even though the USA stayed out of the war at first, their factories got busy making weapons and supplies to help their friends England, France and others. And more Americans were working.

When the Japanese attacked American ships anchored at Pearl Harbour, Hawaii, on December 7, 1941, the USA entered World War II and fought for the next four years. FDR was a true commander-in-chief, studying battle plans, appointing field commanders and, using the radio to talk to Americans, kept the nation solidly behind the war.

FDR was the only physically disabled president, but he got around with crutches, and eventually in a wheelchair. Most people didn’t know about his condition.

When FDR died suddenly of a brain hemorrhage on April 12, 1945, the country was at work again, Victory in the Second World War was just around the corner, and the United States had a new place of respect in the world. He died as one of the most beloved, admired, and respected leaders in history.

Feeling that the future peace of the world would



depend upon relations between the United States and Russia, he devoted much thought to the planning of a United Nations, in which, he hoped, international difficulties could be settled.

In 1997, a memorial to him was unveiled on the Mall in the nation's capital. Only three other presidents have been given the same honour: Washington, Jefferson, and Lincoln.

John F. Kennedy: 35th President (1961-1963)

Jack

'And so, my fellow Americans: ask not what your country can do for you – ask what you can do for your country.'

John Fitzgerald Kennedy was the country's youngest president and the first Roman Catholic ever



to be elected. He was also known informally as Jack Kennedy and JFK. President for only 1 000 days before a gunman ended his young life, Jack Kennedy left one of the most lasting impressions of any president in history. Handsome, charming, with an eloquence of an actor, he inspired a whole generation to take up the challenges of a 'New Frontier.' The glamour and idealism of his presidency earned him the nickname 'Camelot', after King Arthur mythical court.

Of Irish descent, he was born in Brookline, Massachusetts, in a rich family, on May 29, 1917. Graduated from Harvard in 1940, he entered the Navy. Kennedy was a captain of a small PT (patrol torpedo) boat in the Pacific during World War II. One night, while the boat drifted and the crew slept, a Japanese destroyer rammed the PT boat and the whole crew went into the water. Kennedy led his men on a three-mile swim through shark-infested waters to safety, towing a wounded crewman by holding the strap from his life vest in his teeth.

Kennedy came home a hero and went into politics. He became a Democratic Congressman from the Boston area, advancing in 1953 to the Senate. He married Jacqueline Bouvier on September 12, 1953. After serving in Congress, he became the youngest man ever to run for president, and he won in 1961. His Inaugural Address offered the memorable injunction: ask not what your country can do for you – 'ask what you can do for your country.' He asked the world, including the enemies, to never give up on peace.

JFK passed a law giving equal rights to minorities and created the Peace Corps, which sent Americans to work for free in poor foreign countries. He promised to put a man on the Moon within nine years. He also started putting troops into a small country in Asia called Vietnam.

Kennedy's greatest success as President was in dealing with the **Cuban missile crisis**¹ and his worst failure was over **the Bay of Pigs**² incident.

In an event that still shocks and saddens the world, President Kennedy was assassinated probably by lone gunman Lee Harvey Oswald in Dallas, Texas, on November 22, 1963. Some people believe that others were responsible for his murder, but nothing has ever been definitely proved.

Notes

Cuban missile crisis¹ – it was a dangerous political situation that developed in 1962 between the US and USSR. President Kennedy became aware that there were Soviet nuclear weapons in Cuba and sent US Navy to stop Soviet ships from bringing more. It seemed possible that there would be a nuclear war between the two countries, but the Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev ordered the Russian ships to turn back and later removed all of the weapons.

the Bay of Pigs² – is a bay on the south-west coast of Cuba, where in 1961 about 1500 Cuban exiles landed in an attempt to end the rule of Fidel Castro. The attempt failed, causing great embarrassment to the US President Kennedy and making Castro's position stronger than ever.

GLOSSARY

Read the following words and word combinations according to the reading rules:

- roughhouse – грубое отношение
- secession – отделение (от страны)
- abolitionist – сторонник отмены
- unexcelled – непревзойдённый
- unanimously – единогласно
- ruthless – беспощадный
- indivisible – неделимый
- vitality – жизнеспособность
- scrawny – тощий
- to pick on – придирааться, дразнить
- to herd cattle – пасти скот
- to chase – преследовать
- outlaw – преступник
- sweetheart – возлюбленная
- hand-picked – тщательно подобранный
- prospector – (золото) искатели, исследователи
- vigorously – решительно
- to cheat – мошенничать
- to regain – восстановить
- crutches – костыли
- to endure – выдержать
- concession – уступка
- utilities – коммунальные предприятия
- hemorrhage – кровоизлияние
- eloquence – красноречие, ораторское искусство
- to ram – врезаться
- to tow – тянуть на верёвке, взять на буксир
- life vest – спасательный жилет

-strap – ремешок
-injunction – приказ, указание
-missile – ракета
-Bay of Pigs – залив Кочинос

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR EXERCISES

1. Test-translation. Express the following in English.

1. Эндрю Джексон был 7-м президентом США и одним из основателей Демократической партии. Портрет Джексона можно увидеть на 20-долларовой купюре, а в полный рост и на коне – рядом с Белым домом. Памятник президенту Эндрю Джексону в Вашингтоне был создан в 1852 году и стал первой в мире конной статуей, имеющей две точки опоры. Генерал Джексон изображен на вздыбленном коне во время боя за Новый Орлеан. Вокруг памятника установлены 4 пушки XIX века.
2. Дольше всех президентский пост занимал Франклин Делано Рузвельт. Он был единственным, кто побеждал на выборах четыре раза.
3. Самый короткий срок президентства был у Уильяма Гаррисона (март-апрель 1841): страдавший целым букетом болезней Гаррисон вступил в должность 4 марта 1841 года, а уже 4 апреля умер.
4. Самым старым президентом был Рональд Рейган (1981-1989). На момент первой инаугурации ему было 69 лет.
5. Самым молодым президентом был Теодор Рузвельт (1901-1909) – стал президентом без выборов, когда ему было 42.
6. Джон Кеннеди (1961-1963) был самым молодым президентом на момент избрания (43 с половиной года). Джон Кеннеди также был первым в истории США бойскаутом, ставшим президентом.
7. Самым высоким американским президентом был Авраам Линкольн (1861-1865) – его рост составлял 193 сантиметра, а самым низким Джеймс Мэдисон (1809-1817) – его рост составлял 163 сантиметра.
8. Теодор Рузвельт (1901-1909) был первым главой США, который объехал все, существовавшие тогда 48 штатов. Кроме того, Теодор Рузвельт стал первым президентом, который совершил полет на самолете – причем полет состоялся на одной из самых первых моделей самолета.
9. Ричард Никсон (1969-1974) стал первым президентом, который посетил СССР и Китай.
10. Билл Клинтон (1993-2001) совершил больше всего зарубежных поездок – он побывал в 133 странах.
11. Джон Тайлер (1841-1845) был самым многодетным президентом в истории США. У него было 8 детей от первой жены, и 7 – от второй. Его 15-й ребенок родился, когда президенту было за семьдесят.
12. Президент США Эндрю Джонсон (1865-1869) никогда не учился в школе. Грамоте его обучила жена.
13. Самыми богатыми президентами США — Джордж Вашингтон и Джон Кеннеди. Состояние Вашингтона (плантации, недвижимое имущество и т.д.) могут быть оценены в \$900 млн. по нынешнему курсу; состояние Кеннеди, доставшееся ему от родителей, составляет примерно \$850 млн (по версии журнала Forbes). Один из самых бедных президентов США – Эндрю Джонсон.
14. Больше всего президентов дал США штат Огайо (семь). На втором месте – Нью Йорк (шесть), на третьем – Вирджиния (пять), далее – Массачусетс (четыре), Техас, Теннесси и Калифорния (по

три). Из родного штата Барака Обамы Иллинойса происходил один президент — Авраам Линкольн.

15. Единственным в истории Соединенных Штатов президентом, занявшим этот пост невыборным путем, был Джеральд Форд. Он стал президентом после ухода в отставку Ричарда Никсона.

16. Впервые официальный президентский гимн «Hail to the Chief» был исполнен перед появлением на публике президента Соединенных Штатов Америки Джона Тейлора.

17. Президент Билл Клинтон при рождении получил имя Вильям Джефферсон Блайт, но в 15 лет взял фамилию своего отчима, когда мать вступила в новый брак.

18. Барак Обама является большим поклонником историй о Гарри Поттере и прочитал всю серию книг. Кроме того, он является уже 27-ым по счету президентом США, имеющим образование адвоката. В 2006 году, задолго до своего президентства, Обама получил награду «Грэмми» за аудиовersion своей книги «Мечты моего отца».

19. Президент Джефферсон сам придумал дизайн и текст для своего надгробного камня.

20. Джон Адамс по утрам купался голышом в реке и проходил 10 лет в одном костюме.

21. Эндрю Джексон (7 президент) был ранен в грудь во время дуэли, но врачи не смогли вытащить пулю и президент прожил с ней всю жизнь.

22. Джон Тайлер имел 15 собственных детей. Был среди президентов США и один холостяк — Джеймс Бьюкенен. Во время приемов в Белом Доме роль первой леди исполняла его племянница.

23. Улисс Грант баловал себя сигарами, выкуривая их по 20 в день, и умер от рака горла.

24. Президент Гарфилд мог одновременно одной рукой писать на латыни, а другой — на греческом.

25. В свое время Билл Клинтон распорядился создать для своего кота персональный сайт.

26. Джон Кеннеди стал миллионером в возрасте 21 года.

27. Джим Картер очень любил кресла-качалки и специально заказал в Белый Дом таких целых пять штук. Также он единственный из президентов издал несколько романов.

28. При Джефферсоне в США существовал запрет на игру в бильярд, но в доме президента была бильярдная комната.

29. Президент Тафт имел вес в 160 кг.

30. Президентский срок Джеймса Нокса Полка 1845-1849 ознаменовался крупнейшими территориальными приобретениями США. Были завоёваны у Мексики Нью-Мексико и Калифорния в ходе Американо-мексиканской войны и уступлен Англией Орегон. Соединённые Штаты обрели выход ко второму океану и стали крупной тихоокеанской державой. Современные историки обычно включают Полка в десятку самых выдающихся президентов США.

31. Гарри Трумэн (1945-1953) отдал приказ об атомной бомбардировке Хиросимы и Нагасаки. Один из инициаторов создания НАТО (National Atlantic Treaty Organization, NATO).

32. У Гарри Трумэна была ручная коза, которая паслась на лужайке перед Белым Домом.

33. Дуайт Дэвид Эйзенхауэр (1953-1961) Эйзенхауэр положил конец войне в Корее и стремился возобновить советско-американские встречи на высшем уровне.

34. Ричард Милхаус Никсон (1969-1974) - единственный президент США, досрочно прекративший свои полномочия и подавший в отставку. Во время его правления американские астронавты высадились на Луну.

ORAL LANGUAGE PRACTICE

I. Have a talk based on the texts. Make use of the following questions.

1. Why is A. Lincoln regarded as America's greatest president?
2. What did you know about A. Lincoln's biography?
3. How did Lincoln's political life begin?
4. Why was A. Lincoln reelected unanimously President in 1864? Why did he become so popular? What was his nickname? Why?
5. Why did A. Lincoln die? What happened?
6. How was the period of Reconstruction developing after the Civil War? Did the North and South stop arguing?
7. What did you know about T. Roosevelt's young years?
8. How did he enter politics?
9. What did he do as President? What was his nickname? Why?
10. Why was he called 'near great' President?
11. Why was T. Roosevelt given the Nobel Peace Prize?
12. What did you know about a private life of F. Roosevelt?
13. How did he enter politics?
14. Why were his programs so popular?
15. How did F. Roosevelt win the Great Depression?
16. Was he a true commander-in-chief? Why?
17. Why did Americans love and respect F. Roosevelt?
18. Where was he buried? Why?
19. What did you know about biographical facts of J. Kennedy?
20. What was his nickname? Why?
21. How did J. Kennedy go into politics?
22. How did he solve the world problems? What was Kennedy's greatest success as President?
23. What happened to Kennedy? Why did he die?

II. Translate the suggested video-information from English into Russian. Discuss it.

Additional Information

Досье. Все американские президенты

1. Джордж Вашингтон (1789-1797)

Первый. президент США Джордж Вашингтон – единственный президент, получивший 100% голосов выборщиков. Он также стал первым президентом, чье изображение попало на почтовую марку.

2. Джон Адамс 1797 — 1801

Адамс стал первым хозяином выстроенного при нём Белого дома (тогда ещё так не называвшегося).

3. Томас Джефферсон 1801 — 1809

Автор Декларации независимости (1776), 3-й президент США в 1801—1809, один из отцов-основателей этого государства, выдающийся политический деятель, дипломат и философ эпохи Просвещения. Основными событиями его президентства, успешного для страны, были покупка у Франции Луизианы (1803) и экспедиция Льюиса и Кларка (1804—1806)

4. Джеймс Мэдисон 1809-1817

Являясь президентом, он запретил поддерживать какие-либо отношения с Англией и Францией до отмены постановлений, мешающих торговле с ними нейтральными государствами. Когда французское правительство отменило свои ограничительные распоряжения, Мэдисон дал разрешение на торговлю с Францией, но оставил в силе запрет по отношению к Англии. Это стало причиной войны с Англией в 1812, войны, нанёсший большой урон экономике США.

5. Джеймс Монро 1817-1825

Джеймс Монро - один из организаторов Луизианской покупки и разработчик внешнеполитической концепции, получившей название доктрина Монро.

6. Джон Куинси Адамс 1825-1829

Адамс умер в Вашингтоне во время заседания конгресса, 28 февраля 1848 г. Среди государственных деятелей староамериканской школы он был наиболее ловким и сведущим дипломатом в сношениях с Европой.

7. Эндрю Джэксон 1829-1837

Критики Джексона утверждали, что проведенное по его инициативе упразднение Центрального банка и передача денежной эмиссии в частные руки привело к кризису.

8. Мартин Ван Бурен 1837-1841

Первым делом Ван Бюрена было покончить с финансовыми затруднениями, достигшими в последние годы управления Джексона своего апогея. С этой целью он предложил окончательно отделить финансы государства от банков и устроить государственную казну в Вашингтоне и отделы её в провинциальных городах. Проект этот, однако, был решительно отвергнут, и популярность Ван Бюрена снизилась.

9. Уильям Генри Гаррисон март–апрель 1841

Самый короткий срок президентства (март-апрель 1841):страдавший целым букетом болезней. Гаррисон вступил в должность 4 марта 1841года, а уже 4 апреля умер.

10. Джон Тайлер 1841-1845

Джон Тайлер был самым многодетным президентом в истории США.

11. Джеймс Нокс Полк 1845-1849

Его президентский срок ознаменовался крупнейшими территориальными приобретениями США со времён Луизианской покупки: были завоёваны у Мексики Нью-Мексико и Калифорния в ходе Американо-мексиканской войны и уступлен Англией Орегон. Соединённые Штаты обрели выход ко второму океану и стали крупной тихоокеанской державой. Современные историки обычно включают Полка в десятку самых выдающихся президентов США.

12. Закари Тейлор 1849-1850

Второй президент США, не занимавший до въезда в Белый дом никакого другого государственного поста.

13. Миллард Филмор 1850-1853

Последний президент от партии Вигов США и второй, занявший пост вследствие смерти предшественника. Затем дважды баллотировался в президенты самостоятельно, но оба раза неудачно. Филмор, как и его непосредственные преемники Пирс и Бьюкенен, обычно считается одним из худших президентов США за всю историю.

14. Франклин Пирс 1853-1857

Избранный в 1852 году значительным большинством голосов в президенты Соединённых Штатов как кандидат демократической партии (48-летний Пирс, «тёмная лошадка» своей партии, был на тот момент самым молодым избранным президентом, к тому же внешне привлекательным и хорошим оратором), он во время своего управления (1853—1857) разочаровал своих избирателей. Слабохарактерный Пирс, столкнувшись с серьёзными неудачами, стал хроническим алкоголиком и отошёл от политики. Он умер от цирроза печени.

15. Джеймс Бьюкенен 1857-1861

Единственный президент США, который не был женат. Он был однажды обручен, однако его невеста разорвала помолвку, а вскоре умерла. Консенсус историков традиционно считает Бьюкенена худшим из президентов США за всю историю; этот взгляд, впрочем, оспаривается некоторыми авторами.

16. Авраам Линкольн 1861-1865

Гражданская война стала самым кровопролитным военным конфликтом в истории Соединённых Штатов и самым тяжёлым испытанием для американской демократии. Авраам Линкольн стал центральной исторической фигурой в сознании американского народа, человеком, предотвратившим распад Соединённых Штатов и внёсшим значительный вклад в становление американской нации и отмену рабства как основного препятствия для последующего нормального развития страны. Линкольн придерживался строгих моральных принципов и нравственности, имел чувство юмора, но был склонен и к сильной меланхолии. И по сей день Авраам Линкольн считается одним из самых интеллектуальных президентов Соединённых Штатов. В знак благодарности американского народа в Вашингтоне шестнадцатому президенту Аврааму Линкольну воздвигнут мемориал как одному из четырёх президентов, определивших историческое развитие Соединённых Штатов Америки.

17. Эндрю Джонсон 1865-1869

Став преемником Линкольна после его убийства, он быстро восстановил против себя Конгресс и был единственным до Билла Клинтона[источник не указан 720 дней] президентом, против которого Сенат США рассматривал дело об импичменте.

Во время президентства Джонсона США купили у Российской империи Аляску (1867); значимость этого приобретения сильно недооценивалась современниками.

18. Улисс Симпсон Грант 1869-1877

Генерал армии США с 4 марта 1869 по 4 марта 1877 — 18-й президент США; несмотря на его непреходящую славу как полководца, историки расценивают его президентство достаточно сдержанно.

19. Ратерфорд Бёрчард Хейс 1877-188

Вступив в марте 1877года на президентский пост, Хейз выставил своей политической программой окончательное примирение между северными и южными штатами, восстановление металлической валюты и искоренение подкупа в администрации. Коррупцию ему изжить не удалось, но, несмотря на сильную оппозицию в конгрессе в лице т. н. гринбекеров — сторонников бумажных денег, он провёл закон о металлической валюте.

20. Джеймс Абрам Гарфилд 1881

Президент Джеймс Гарфилд был разносторонне одарённым самоучкой, военачальником и активистом Республиканской партии. Единственный за всю историю США президент, избранный на эту должность в бытность депутатом Палаты представителей Конгресса США. Был тяжело ранен через три месяца после вступления в должность и умер через два с половиной месяца от последствий неудачного лечения.

21. Честер Алан Артур 1881-1885

На посту президента Артур провёл новую реформу гражданской службы, результаты которой сохранялись довольно долго; его называют «отцом гражданской службы США». Несмотря на изначальную непопулярность, Артур справился с президентскими полномочиями более чем успешно, и к концу срока он завоевал всеобщую признательность, даже со стороны такого скептика, как Марк Твен, всегда смеявшегося над политиками.

22. Стивен Гровер Кливленд 1885-1889

Был единственным президентом США, сыгравшим свадьбу непосредственно в Белом доме.

23. Бенджамин Гаррисон 1889-1893

При Гаррисоне в Белом доме было проведено электричество, он был первым президентом, записавшим свой голос на фонограф, и последним президентом, носившим бороду во время пребывания в должности.

Во время его президентства были образованы следующие штаты: Северная и Южная Дакота, Монтана, Вашингтон (1889), Айдахо и Вайоминг (1890).

24. Стивен Гровер Кливленд 1893-1897

Единственный президент США, занимавший свой пост два срока с перерывом и соответственно получивший двойную нумерацию в списке президентов (в 1885—1889 годах, 22-й президент, и в 1893—1897 годах, 24-й президент).

25. Уильям Мак-Кинли 1897-1901

В честь Мак-Кинли названа гора Мак-Кинли на Аляске, высочайшая точка Северной Америки. Появлялось также предложение переименовать в честь Мак-Кинли Филиппины.

26. Теодор Рузвельт 1901 - 1909

Он стал президентом без выборов, когда ему было 42 года, 10 месяцев и 18 дней.

27. Уильям Хауард Тафт 1909-1913

Был самым тяжелым президентом США — он весил более 135кг.

28. Томас Вудро Вильсон 1913-1921

Вильсон стал первым президентом США, посетившим с официальным визитом Европу, участвуя в работе Парижской мирной конференции. Предложения Вильсона были положены в основу Версальского договора.

29. Уоррен Гардинг 1921 - 1923

Сторонник невмешательства государства в экономику. После двухлетнего популярного правления, ознаменованного огромным количеством скандалов администрации, Гардинг скончался 2 августа 1923 в Сан-Франциско во время турне по западным штатам, предположительно от обширного инфаркта. После его смерти широкое распространение получили слухи об отравлении, причём в числе других подозрения падали также и на его жену. Гардинг известен как любитель богемного образа жизни (покер, пристрастие к благородным напиткам, любовные похождения), которому он не изменил и вовремя своего президентства

30. Калвин Кулидж 1923-1929

Правление Кулиджа, руководствовавшегося принципом невмешательства в экономику, было довольно успешным; Штаты переживали бурный экономический рост. Вместе с тем уже в следующее правление этот успех обернулся мощным кризисом («Великой депрессией»). При Кулидже индейцы получили полноправное американское гражданство; вместе с тем проблема афро-американцев была далеко не разрешена, и 1920-е годы отмечены резким всплеском деятельности Ку-Клукс-Клана и судов Линча.

31. Герберт Кларк Гувер 1929-1933

Правление Гувера, избранного президентом в 1928, ознаменовалось тяжелейшим экономическим кризисом — Великой депрессией; политика ‘laissez faire’ (государственного невмешательства в экономику) доказала своё полное банкротство. Сошла на нет и репутация Гувера как удачного менеджера, несмотря на ряд попыток уменьшить масштабы кризиса, — по тем временам очень смелых попыток. Традиционно Гувера принято обвинять как президента, не сумевшего предложить эффективной стратегии выхода из ситуации.

32. Франклин Делано Рузвельт 1933-1945

Он был единственным, кто побеждал на выборах четыре раза. Рузвельт проявил себя как неординарный, гибкий политик, тонко чувствующий ситуацию, способный верно угадывать тенденции и своевременно и точно реагировать на изменение настроения всех слоев общества. Оставаясь верным сыном своего класса, Рузвельт делал все, чтобы сохранить и развить существующий общественно-экономический строй в стране и укрепить доминирующее положение США во всем мире. Рузвельт всегда оставался трезвым и прагматичным политиком.

33. Гарри Трумэн 1945-1953

Отдал приказ об атомной бомбардировке Хиросимы и Нагасаки. Один из инициаторов создания НАТО (National Atlantic Treaty Organization, NATO).

34. Дуайт Дэвид Эйзенхауэр 1953-1961

Эйзенхауэр положил конец войне в Корее и стремился возобновить советско-американские встречи на высшем уровне. Вместе с тем он был твердо убежден в реальности коммунистической угрозы и необходимости укрепления американской национальной безопасности.

35. Джон Фицджералд Кеннеди 1961-1963

Кеннеди — первый президент США-католик, первый президент, родившийся в XX веке, самый молодой избранный президент в истории страны. Двухлетнее президентство Кеннеди, прерванное его загадочным убийством, ознаменовано Карибским кризисом, серьёзными шагами по уравниванию чернокожих в правах, началом космической программы США «Аполлон».

Джон Кеннеди был убит 22 ноября 1963 года в городе Даллас (штат Техас).

36. Линдон Джонсон 1963-1969

22 ноября 1963 года Кеннеди был убит, и с этого дня Джонсон начал исполнение обязанностей президента. Джонсон (ехавший в том же кортеже машин, что и президент) приступил к исполнению обязанностей президента, принеся присягу на борту президентского самолёта № 1, стоявшего на аэродроме Далласа, непосредственно перед вылетом в Вашингтон

37. Ричард Милхаус Никсон 1969-1974

Единственный президент США, досрочно прекративший свои полномочия и подавший в отставку. Это случилось после скандала, известного как «Уотергейт», и обвинений, грозивших ему импичментом. Никсона обычно относят к числу самых одиозных президентов. Во время его правления американские астронавты высадились на Луну.

38. Джералд Рудолф Форд 1974 - 1977

Недолгое правление Форда ознаменовалось продолжением политики разрядки в отношениях с СССР; так, он нанёс визит в Советский Союз и встречался с Л. Брежневым во Владивостоке. На Форда было организовано несколько покушений.

39. Джеймс (Джимми) Эрл Картер 1977-1981

Был единственным президентом США, издавшим несколько романов.

40. Роналд Уилсон Рейган 1981-1989

Был приверженцем наименьшего вмешательства правительства в регуляцию экономики. Подобных взглядов он придерживался на посту губернатора и успешно их реализовывал в этой должности. Пережил попытку покушения (1981). Провёл несколько военных операций за рубежом, в том числе на Гренаде и против Ливии. В 1984 г. был переизбран на второй срок абсолютным большинством голосов.

Второй срок президентства был отмечен значительными шагами вперед к окончанию холодной войны. Но его администрация была также замешана во множестве скандалов. Он назвал СССР империей зла и открыто поддерживал антикоммунистические движения по всему миру. Позже он провёл переговоры с генеральным секретарем ЦК КПСС Михаилом Горбачёвым о сокращении ядерного арсенала.

В 1994 г. у Рейгана диагностировали болезнь Альцгеймера. В 1995 году был награждён дипломом «Хранитель Огня» от Центра политики безопасности США. Умер в 2004 году в возрасте 93-х лет. О нём снят фильм «Рейганы» (The Reagans, 2003).

41. Джордж Герберт Уокер Буш 1989-1993

Был постоянным представителем США при ООН в 1971—1973 гг. В 1976—1977 годах — директор ЦРУ, в 1981—1989 был вице-президентом США в администрации своего предшественника Рональда Рейгана. В его президентство произошёл распад Варшавского договора, СЭВ, а затем и Советского союза (1990—1991; коалиция во главе с США успешно провела операцию «Буря в пустыне», освободив Кувейт от иракской оккупации (1991). В августе 1991 г. нанёс визит в СССР, в своих выступлениях в Киеве поддерживал президента СССР Михаила Горбачёва.

42. Уильям (Билл) Джефферсон Клинтон 1993-2001

Не имея опыта в большой политике, Биллу пришлось довольно трудно на первом этапе его срока. Но все же ему удалось поднять экономику США и уменьшить безработицу. И на выборах 1996 года Билл Клинтон снова победил.

На втором сроке самым громким событием стал скандал вокруг Билла Клинтона и практикантки Белого дома Моники Левински. Информация об этом и последующее расследование привели к попытке импичмента Билла Клинтона в 1998 году.

43. Джордж В. Буш 2001-2009

Во время предвыборной кампании, Буш искусно обыграл и подал публике скандал Клинтон-Левински, что сыграло ему на руку. Он стал вторым президентом США (после Джона К. Адамса), который занял пост после правления отца. Другой рекорд, который приписывают Бушу – он стал кандидатом, проигравшим по количеству полученных голосов граждан (на 0,5 млн. чел.), но набравшим большинство голосов выборщиков.

44. Барак Хусейн Обама II 2009-2017

До избрания президентом был младшим сенатором США от штата Иллинойс. Первый афроамериканец, выдвинутый на пост президента США.

45. Дональд Трамп 2017- 2021

Дональд Трамп — 45-й президент Соединённых Штатов. До своей президентской кампании в 2016 году Трамп был наиболее известен как застройщик и бизнесмен, который владел, управлял или лицензировал своё имя для коммерческой и жилой недвижимости по всему миру. Трамп дважды попадал в финансовую яму — в начале девяностых годов и в разгар ипотечного кризиса двухтысячных. Дело доходило до частичного банкротства, но оба раза он сумел снова развернуться и отыграть утраченные позиции, даже вернув людям, пострадавшим от его ошибок, какие-то деньги. Американцы ценят успешных людей. Но еще больше они ценят тех, кто умеет падать и подниматься

46. Джо Байден 2021-2025

Д. Байден — самый пожилой президент в истории США, на момент официального вступления в должность ему стукнуло 78 лет. В общем, вся жизнь впереди. Но что самое интересное, в свое время он стал самым молодым сенатором в США, которому на момент избрания было всего лишь 29 лет.

Первый раз он баллотировался в президенты в 1987 году, но снял свою кандидатуру. Почему? Потому что выяснилось, что слегка приврал о своем рабочем происхождении, учебных степенях и о том, что участвовал в движении за гражданские права.

Второй раз он попытался завоевать звездно-полосатый трон в 2008 году, но тоже не получилось: были проблемы с финансированием, набрал слишком мало процентов на президентских собраниях в Айове.

По данным Gallup, большинство американцев считают, что **за время правления Джо Байдена США потеряли свое положение в мире**, также в вину президенту ставят рекордный федеральный долг и провалы в миграционной политике, растущий разрыв между богатыми и бедными и всплеск преступности.

Комитет по надзору палаты представителей конгресса США провел тщательное расследование **коррупционных связей президента Байдена и его семьи с другими государствами**, включая Румынию, Китай, Казахстан и Украину. По коррупционным схемам **семья президента США и их сообщники получили порядка \$20 млн.**

47. Дональд Трамп 2025 –

Он стал вторым президентом США, который занимал пост не подряд, а с перерывами. В 2024 году Трамп снова стал кандидатом от Республиканской партии на пост президента и победил демократа Камалу Харрис. После вступления в должность в январе 2025 года он сделал

приоритетными направлениями своей политики торговую политику, сокращение федерального правительства и отказ от программ многообразия, равноправия и инклюзивности (DEI). Основным лозунг предвыборной кампании Трампа — «Сделаем Америку снова великой!»

СПИСОК ЛИТЕРАТУРЫ

1. A Few Lessons from American History: Reader for Students of English [Электронный ресурс] / М.В. Lomonosov Moscow State University, Law School, Department of Foreign Languages. – Москва : Статут, 2014. – 80 с.
2. On the other side of the channel (По ту сторону пролива) [Электронный ресурс] / составители М. В. Процуто, Л. П. Маркушевская. — Санкт-Петербург : Университет ИТМО, 2014. — 134 с.
3. Агабабян, С.Р. История Англии: учебное пособие по курсу «История стран изучаемого языка (на иностранном языке)» : [Электронный ресурс] / С.Р. Агабабян, И.Г. Барабанова ; Ростовский государственный экономический университет (РИНХ), Факультет лингвистики и журналистики. – Ростов-на-Дону : Издательско-полиграфический комплекс РГЭУ (РИНХ), 2018. – 92 с.
4. Борзова, Е.П. Политические и избирательные системы. Государства британского содружества : учебное пособие [Электронный ресурс] / Е.П. Борзова, И.И. Бурдукова, А.Н. Чистяков. – Санкт-Петербург : Издательство «СПбКО», 2013. – Т. 1. – 176 с.
5. Голицынский, Ю.Б. Великобритания: пособие по страноведению : [Электронный ресурс] / Ю.Б. Голицынский. – 2-е изд., испр. – Санкт-Петербург : КАРО, 2019. – 480 с.
6. Диалог культур и цивилизаций на примере Британской империи : учебное пособие [Электронный ресурс] / В.В. Высокова, В.Н. Грак, И.А. Савинов, Е.Ю. Чемякин ; под общ. ред. В.В. Высоковой ; Уральский федеральный университет им. первого Президента России Б. Н. Ельцина. – Екатеринбург : Издательство Уральского университета, 2012. – 140 с.
7. Дмитриева, Ю. В. Across the English speaking countries : методическое пособие по страноведению для студентов гуманитарного факультета, обучающихся по направлению 540300 - «Филологическое образование» (540306 - Иностранный язык) [Электронный ресурс] / Ю. В. Дмитриева. — Соликамск : Соликамский государственный педагогический институт, 2010. — 59 с.
8. Енбаева, Л. В. Лингвострановедение. Английский язык : учебно-методическое пособие для самостоятельной работы студентов [Электронный ресурс] / Л. В. Енбаева. — Пермь : Пермский государственный гуманитарно-педагогический университет, 2016. — 47 с.
9. Колыхалова, О.А. British cities : учебное пособие [Электронный ресурс] / О.А. Колыхалова, К.С. Махмурян. – Москва : Прометей, 2015. – 84 с.
10. Маневич, А. Н. Самые знаменитые достопримечательности Великобритании : иллюстрированная энциклопедия [Электронный ресурс] / А. Н. Маневич, И. А. Маневич. — Москва : Белый город, 2010. — 104 с.
11. Мкртчян, Т.Ю. Страноведение англоязычных стран: учебное пособие для студентов института филологии, журналистики и межкультурной коммуникации : [Электронный ресурс] / Т.Ю. Мкртчян, Т.Н. Разуваева ; Министерство науки и высшего образования РФ, Южный федеральный университет, Институт филологии, журналистики и межкультурной коммуникации. – Ростов-на-Дону ; Таганрог : Южный федеральный университет, 2018. – 215 с.
12. Остапенко, Г. С. Новейшая история Великобритании: XX — начало XXI века : учеб. пособие [Электронный ресурс] / Г.С. Остапенко, А.Ю. Прокопов. — Москва : Вузовский учебник, ИНФРА-М, 2017. — 472 с.
13. Смирнова, М.Н. Англоязычные страны : учебное пособие [Электронный ресурс] / М.Н. Смирнова, М.Ю. Шамшурова ; Министерство образования и науки РФ, Глазовский государственный педагогический институт имени В.Г. Короленко. – Глазов : Глазовский государственный педагогический институт, 2014. – 170 с.
14. Согрин, В.В. Центральные проблемы истории США : монография [Электронный ресурс] / В.В. Согрин. – Москва : Весь Мир, 2013. – 352 с.
15. Страноведение Соединенного Королевства и США = UK and US studies : учебное пособие [Электронный ресурс] / составители Н. Н. Петрова, Т. П. Руденко, Д. В. Трашков, под редакцией Т. П. Руденко. — Омск : Омский государственный университет им. Ф.М. Достоевского, 2015. — 128 с.

